



LAO

for

Beginners

An Introduction
to the Spoken
and Written
Language
of Laos

by Tatsuo Hoshino
and Russell Marcus



Tuttle Language Library

ບ
b

ປ
bp

ດ
d

ຕ
dt

ຟ
f

ຮ
h

ຫ
h

ຂ
k

ລ
l

ມ
m

ນ
n

ງ
ng

ຍ
ny

ພ
p

ຜ
p

ຊ
s

ສ
s

ທ
t

ວ
w

ຢ
y

LIST OF BEGINNERS

an introduction to the
and written
of Lao

Some of the material in this book was first published
in 1973 by Siam Communications Ltd., Bangkok,
under the title *Basic Lao*

Published by the Charles E. Tuttle Company, Inc.
of Rutland, Vermont & Tokyo, Japan
with editorial offices at
2-6 Suido 1-chome, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo 112

First edition, 1981
First paperback edition, 1989
Fourth printing, 1995

LCC Card No. 81-50487
ISBN 0-8048-1629-8
PRINTED IN SINGAPORE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

How to Use This Book	7
Acknowledgements	8
Part 1: How to Speak Lao	9
Introduction on Phonetics	11
How to Use Part 1	15
Lesson 1: Coming and Going	17
Lesson 2: Introductions	24
Lesson 3: The Neighbors—Part 1	33
Lesson 4: The Neighbors—Part 2	40
Lesson 5: Going to Market by Pedicab	48
Lesson 6: Bargaining at the Market	60
Lesson 7: Renting a House	75
Lesson 8: Paying a Visit	84
Lesson 9: The Daily Routine	99
Lesson 10: Touring Vientiane	114
Lesson 11: Chatting	125
Lesson 12: Lao Class (A letter)	132
Part 2: Grammar Review	141
Section 1: Question Words and Short Answers	141
Section 2: Nouns and Pronouns	143
Section 3: Adjectives	149
Section 4: Classifiers	150
Section 5: Verbs and Tenses	152
Section 6: Adverbs	154
Section 7: Connecting Particles	155
Section 8: Symbols and Punctuation	156
Part 3: How to Read Lao	157
Introduction on Tones and Letters	158
Lesson 1: Kang Consonants with Long Vowels	162
Lesson 2: Kang Consonants with Mai Ek	164

Lesson 3: Kang Consonants with Short Vowels	167
Lesson 4: Nasal Finals	169
Lesson 5: Diphthongs	172
Lesson 6: Semi-vowels	174
Lesson 7: Tam Consonants	176
Lesson 8: Sung Consonants	179
Lesson 9: Aspirants and Non-aspirants	183
Lesson 10: Mai to	185
Lesson 11: Stops	188
Lesson 12: Consonant Clusters and the Missing "a:"	191
Phonetic Equivalents to Exercises in Part 3	194
Part 4: Lao-English Glossary for Beginners	201

HOW TO USE THIS BOOK

Lao for Beginners is for the person who is beginning to learn Lao, be he businessman, student, refugee worker, tourist or simply a person with Lao friends. Lao for Beginners is primarily a workbook full of exercises to help beginners practice and acquire the ability to communicate with Lao people in Lao. It is not a phrase book to scratch the surface of the Lao language. The book has been tested in classrooms and by individuals who have used it successfully to learn Lao.

Lao for Beginners was designed for people who want to learn Lao fast and communicate with Lao people in the Lao language. The book mainly teaches speaking (PART 1), although there is also a section which teaches reading (PART 3). The vocabulary in the whole text is limited to the 1,000 most frequently used words in everyday speech based on one of the author's own research in Vientiane.

The Lao words are listed in a special glossary for beginners (PART 4) which is arranged in English alphabetical order. (An English-Lao glossary is not included since the English-Lao, Lao-English Dictionary (Tuttle, 1970) is intended as a companion book to this one.)

To make the going easier, all exercises are written in phonetics which are English letters for Lao sounds. (Lao phonetics are explained in the introduction to PART 1.) As an additional aid, a review of the major features of Lao grammar is condensed into only 16 pages (including very useful tables) and is located in one place (PART 2) so that it can be read quickly and used as a reference frequently.

Everyone who already knows one language has proven his language ability. This book permits people to exercise this ability and successfully learn the Lao language.

Acknowledgements

We wish to express our sincere appreciation to the following people for their cooperation, assistance and patience in preparing this book.

To Thao Nene and Nang Chanob Pathammavong whose comments were valuable assistance in the research to analyze and record the Lao language as it is actually spoken in the Vientiane area, on which this book is based.

To Mr. Shigeo Hatsushiba who provided facilities and guidance in the techniques of manuscript preparation, to Miss Hitomi Komiya who did most of the typing and to Miss Tamami Watanabe who performed most of the mechanical work.

And finally, we wish to pay tribute to our wives and to the concept of mutual encouragement which was an essential catalyst for the realization of this work.

October, 1980

Tatsuo Hoshino
Russell Marcus

PART 1: HOW TO SPEAK LAO

Introduction on Phonetics

The Lao script is a very ingenious invention; it communicates not only the sounds of words, but also the tones or pitch on which they should be spoken. Thus for example, the Lao script for the word "house" not only indicates the sound of the Lao word ("ban"), but also that this word should be spoken with a high falling tone.

Furthermore, the Lao script is a phonetic script which means that words are usually spelled the way they sound. English is not phonetic since there are many ways to spell one sound (such as "write," "right" and "rite") and also different sounds for the same letter (as for example the letter "c" in the words "cake," "church" and "cease").

Nonetheless, this ingeniousness of the Lao alphabet has its limitations since the alphabet is a modified ancient Indian script, and it cannot be read by English speakers who have not studied a course on how to read the Lao alphabet (see PART 3 of this book).

To surmount this difficulty, this book uses the phonetic system from the English-Lao: Lao-English Dictionary (Tuttle, 1970) which converts the phonetic Lao letters systematically into English character equivalents (a "phonetic" system using English letters) along with a number to indicate the tone of each syllable. The resulting phonetics for consonants and vowels together with a tone pitch chart are presented for reference in the tables on the following pages. A summary of the main features of Lao consonants, vowels and tones is given below.

1. CONSONANTS

There are 33 Lao consonants (as shown on the next page) which fall into 3 groups which are distinguished by tone: namely, low, high and rising. With one exception, all the consonants in the high and rising groups have the same sound excluding tone; thus for example, there are two letters "s": a high-tone "s" and a rising-tone "s". Since their sounds are the same, this means that the number of different sounds in Lao is only 20. All of these 20 sounds exist in English,

PHONETICS FOR CONSONANTS

	Phonetic	Similar English sound	Tone Number	Lao Consonants
1	b	<u>b</u> and	1	ບ
2	bp	ra <u>b</u> bit	1	ປ
3	ch	<u>j</u> oke	1	ຈ
4	d	<u>d</u> eck	1	ດ
5	dt	mo <u>d</u> el	1	ຕ
6	f	<u>f</u> ish	3, 4	ຟ ຜີ
7	g	<u>g</u> irl	1	ກ
8	h	<u>h</u> ouse	3, 4	ຮ ຫ
9	k	<u>k</u> ing	3, 4	ກ ຂ
10	l(r)	<u>l</u> ist	3	ຮ
11	l	"	3, 4	ລ ຫຼ
12	m	<u>m</u> an	3, 4	ມ ຫມ
13	n	<u>n</u> ew	3, 4	ນ ຫນ
14	ng	<u>s</u> ing	3, 4	ງ ຫງ
15	ny	<u>c</u> anyon	3, 4	ຍ ຫຍ
16	p	<u>p</u> en	3, 4	ພ ຫພ
17	s	<u>s</u> ail	3, 4	ຊ ຫສ
18	t	<u>t</u> ime	3, 4	ທ ຫດ
19	w	<u>w</u> in	3, 4	ວ ຫວ
20	y	<u>y</u> es	1	ຢ
21	-	-	1	ອ
	Total	20	3	33

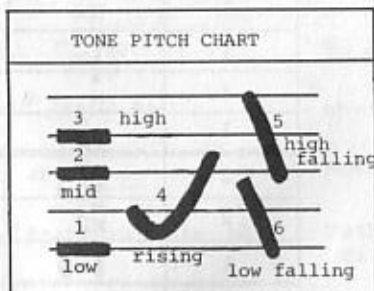
but it may take a little practice to say some of them as initial letters (ng for example, since in English this sound is only used at the ends of words). Additionally, there is one Lao consonant letter which has no sound. It is used to start syllables which begin with a vowel sound since it is a rule for writing to begin all syllables with a consonant letter.

2. VOWELS

There are 28 Lao vowel sounds (as shown on the next page) which can be divided into 2 types: short and long vowel sounds which differ from each other only in terms of the duration over which they are pronounced. A close equivalent exists for most Lao vowel sounds. The written form of vowels depends on whether they are written as open syllables (ie, initial consonant plus vowel without a final consonant) or closed syllables (ie, initial consonant plus vowel plus final consonant); however, this feature need not concern the beginner since the phonetic is the same for a vowel in an open syllable and a closed one.

3. TONES

There are six tones in Lao: namely 3 level tones (low, mid and high), 1 rising tone and 2 falling tones (high falling and low falling). The tones are relative pitches for each speaker (as shown in the tone pitch chart below) in order to accommodate for different tonal qualities between people's voices. The six tone numbers are written together with every phonetic syllable in this book so that the syllables may be correctly sung.



PHONETICS FOR VOWELS

Phonetic	Similar English sound	No. of spelling variations	Lao Vowels (short and long)			
			short	short + final		
1	a:	back	2	xɛ	xx	BASIC VOWELS
2	i:	easy	1	xo	-	
3	eu:	few *	1	xə	-	
4	u:	school	1	xɯ	-	
5	e:	less	2	[xɛ	[xx	
6	ae:	bake	2	[[xɛ	[[xx	
7	o:	flow	2]xɛ]xx	
8	oh:	flaw	2	[xɤ	xɣx	
9	er:	her	1	[x ^o	-	DIPHTHONGS
10	ia:	asia	2	[x ^o]ɛ	x ^o]x	
11	ua:	fuel	2	x ^o]ɛ	x ^o]x	
12	eua:	fewer*	1	[x ^o ɣ	-	
13	ai:	life	2	-]x]x	
14	ao:	out	1	-	[xɤ	SPECIAL VOWELS
15	a:m	hum	1	-	xɤ	

			Lao Vowels (long and long + final)				
			long	long + final			
16	a	Same as above only longer duration	1	xɤ	-	BASIC VOWELS	
17	i		1	xo	-		
18	eu		1	xə	-		
19	u		1	xɯ	-		
20	e		1	[x	-		
21	ae		1	[[x	-		
22	o		1]x	-		
23	oh		2	xɤ	xɣx		
24	er		1	[x ^o	-		
25	ia		2	[x ^o]ɛ	x ^o]x		DIPHTHONGS
26	ua		2	x ^o]ɛ	x ^o]x		
27	eua		1	[x ^o ɣ	-		
28	oy		1	-	xɣɯ		
	Total		28	39	24		

* Note: smile to approximate the Lao sound more closely.

HOW TO USE PART 1

Each of the 12 lessons in PART 1 consists of substitution exercises, vocabulary exercises and a text. The elements of these exercises are explained below. The phonetics in each exercise are the essence of this book for beginners. The Lao is presented for teachers and for students who have completed PART 3 and have learned to read Lao.

Substitution Exercises introduce Lao vocabulary in the context of sentences, one sentence pattern at a time. Box frames are used so that a sentence pattern can be varied and practiced with alternative verbs, subjects, adjectives, objects, etc. The position of words is identical in the Lao, phonetic and English blocks to permit easy comparisons.

Example:

ຂ ເຈົ້າ	ໄປ	ໃສ
ໄພ້ມ	ມາແຕ່	
ແມ່ເຈົ້າ	ອີ່ໄປ	
ພໍ່ເຈົ້າ		

chao: ⁵	bpai: ¹	sai: ⁴
per:n ²	ma ³ dtae ²	
mae ² chao: ⁵	si: ² bpai: ¹	
pch ² chao: ⁵		

Sentence
pattern

Alternative
parts

You	go	where?
He	comes from	
Your mother	will go	
Your father		

Vocabulary Exercises define the 160 most frequently used words by listing common sentences for each key word, one at a time. The position of the Lao, phonetic and English sentences is identical in each column to permit easy comparisons.

Example:

ໄປ

bpai:¹ Key word shown in the sentences below.

To go

ເຈົ້າໄປໃສ

chao:⁵ bpai:¹ sai:⁴

Where are you going?

ແມ່ອີ່ໄປຕລາດ

mae² si:² bpai:¹ dta:³ lat⁴

Mother will go to market.

ພໍ່ໄປນາ ດຽວນີ້

poh² bpai:¹ na³ diaw¹ ni⁵

Father is going to the rice-field now.

Texts present common situations and conversations using the vocabulary and sentence patterns introduced in the exercises. Each sentence on speech is numbered the same in all 3 texts (Lao, phonetic and English) to permit easy comparisons.

Example:

1. ກຳ ສບາຍດີ
2. ຈິດ ສບາຍດີ
3. ກຳ ເຈົ້າຊີ້ໄປໄສ
4. ຈິດ ຊີ້ໄປນາ ເຈົ້າມາແຕ່ໄສ

reference

- number 1. Ka:m¹: Sa:³ bai⁴ di¹.
2. Chi:t³: Sa:³ bai⁴ di¹.
3. Ka:m¹: C⁵ao:⁵ si² bpai:¹ sai:⁴?
4. Chi:t³: Si² bpai:¹ na³.
Chao:⁵ ma³ dtae² sai:⁴ ?

1. Kham: Hello.
2. Chit: Hello.
3. Kham: Where are you going?
4. Chit: I'm going to the rice-field.
Where are you coming from?

Additional Learning Aids:

PART 1: Introduction on Phonetics is a 4-page summary of the phonetic system used to transcribe Lao words into English letters.

PART 2: Grammar Review is a 16-page summary of the major features of the Lao language. However, if you really want to learn Lao, you should rely on the exercises in PART 1 to learn how to speak Lao and on the exercises in PART 3 to learn how to read Lao.

LESSON 1: COMING AND GOING

Substitution Exercise

ສບາຍດີ ໄປກ່ອນເດີ	ສບາຍດີ ລາກ່ອນ
sa:³ bai⁴ di¹ bpai:¹ gohn² der¹	sa:³ bai⁴ di¹ la³ gohn⁴
Hello. Good-bye. (Going person)	Hello. Good-bye. (Staying person)

ເຈົ້າຊິໄປໃສ	ຊິໄປ	ຕະລາດ
		ນາ ບານແມ່ຂອງ
chao:⁵ si:² bpai:¹ sai:⁴	si:² bpai:¹	dta:³ lat⁴ na³ ban⁵ mae² kohy⁴
Where are you going?	I'm going to	market. the field. my mother's house.

ເພິ່ນມາແຕ່ໃສ	ມາແຕ່	ນາ
		ຕະລາດ ບານເພິ່ນ
per:n² ma³ dtae² sai:⁴	ma³ dtae²	na³ dta:³ lat⁴ ban⁵ per:n²
Where did you come from?	I came from	the field. market. your house.

ເຈົ້າ	ສບາຍດີບໍ່	ຂອງໃຈ	ຂອງ	ສບາຍດີ
ເພິ່ນ ແມ່ເຈົ້າ ພໍ່ເຈົ້າ		ເພິ່ນ		
chao:⁵	sa:³ bai⁴ di¹ boh²	kohp⁴ chai:¹	kohy⁴	sa:³ bai⁴ di¹
per:n² mae² chao:⁵ poh² chao:⁵			per:n²	
How are you?	they?	your mother?	your father?	Thank you. I'm fine. They are

(See also p.153/5.5)

မိဘ မိဘ	ယုဘယု	မိ	ယု
မိဘ		မိ	
မိ		မိ	
မိ		မိ	

poh ² chao: ⁵	yu ² ban ⁵ boh ²	poh ²	boh ² yu ²
mae ² chao: ⁵		mae ²	
per:n ²		per:n ²	
chao: ⁵		kohy ⁶	

(Is)	your father	at home?
	your mother	
	he	
(Are)	you	

Father	isn't there.
Mother	
He	
You	(aren't there.)

(See also p.142/1.3.2)

တၢ်လၢၤ	မိ	ယု
	မိ	
	မိ	
	မိ	

ယု

dtohn' laeng ¹	per:n ²	yu ² ban ⁵ boh ²	yu ²
	chao: ⁵		
	poh ² chao: ⁵		
	mae ² chao: ⁵		

In the evening,	he	is	at home?	Yes.
	you	are		
	your father			
	your mother			

ເຈົ້າ	ມາແຕ່	ຕະຫຼາດ	ບໍ່
ເພິ່ນ	ໄປ	ນາ	
ແມ່ເຈົ້າ	ຢູ່	ບ້ານ	
ພໍ່ເຈົ້າ			

chao: ⁵	ma ³ dtae ¹	dta: ³ lat ⁴	boh ⁴
per:n ²	bpai: ¹	na ³	
mae ² chao: ⁵	yu ²	ban ⁵	
poh ² chao: ⁵			
You	come from	market	?
He	goes to	the field	
Your mother	is at	home	
Your father			

ລາວ	ໄປ	ຕະຫຼາດ
ແມ່ຂອງ	ໄປ	ນາ
ຂອງ	ມາແຕ່	ນາ
ພໍ່ຂອງ	ຢູ່	ບ້ານ

lao ³	bpai: ¹	dta: ³ lat ⁴
mae ² kohy ⁴	bpai: ¹	na ³
kohy ⁴	ma ³ dtae ¹	na ³
poh ² kohy ⁴	yu ²	ban ⁵
They	go to	market.
My mother	goes to	the field.
I	come from	the field.
My father	is at	home.

ແມ່ຂອງ	ມາຫາ	ເຈົ້າ
ຂອງ	ໄປຫາ	ພໍ່ລາວ
ພໍ່ຂອງ		

mae ² kohy ⁴	ma ³ ha ¹	chao: ⁵
kohy ⁴	bpai ¹ ha ¹	poh ² lao ³
poh ² kohy ⁴		
My mother	comes to see	you.
I	go to see	his father.
My father		

ເຈົ້າ	ໄປ	ໃສ
ເພິ່ນ	ມາແຕ່	
ແມ່ເຈົ້າ	ຊື່ໄປ	
ພໍ່ເຈົ້າ		

chao: ⁵	bpai: ¹	sai: ⁷
per:n ²	ma ³ dtae ²	
mae ² chao: ⁵	si: ² bpai: ¹	
poh ² chao: ⁵		
You	go	where?
He	comes from	
Your mother	will go	
Your father		

Vocabulary Exercise

1-1 ไป (See also p.154/5.7)

เจ้าไปไหน

แม่จะไปตลาด

พ่อไปนา ถูงนี้

ខ្ញុំទៅប្រគល់

เจ้าไปบ้าน

bpai:¹

chao:⁵ bpai:¹ sai:⁴

mae:² si:² bpai:¹ dta:³ lat:⁶

poh:² bpai:¹ na:³ diaw:¹ ni:⁵

kohy:⁶ si:² bpai:¹ ban:⁵ lao:³

chao:⁵ bpai:¹ ban:⁵ boh:²

To go

Where are you going?

Mother will go to market.

Father is going to the rice-field now.

I will go to his house.

Are you going home?

1-2 มาแต่

ลาวมาแต่ไหน

ខ្ញុំមកពីទីផ្សារ

ប្រពន្ធខ្ញុំមកពីវាល

เจ้ามาแต่บ้านเจ้า

เขามาแต่

ma:¹ dtae:²

lao:³ ma:³ dtae:² sai:⁴

kohy:⁶ ma:³ dtae:² dta:³ lat:⁶

poh:² mae:² kohy:⁶ ma:³ dtae:² na:³

chao:⁵ ma:³ dtae:² ban:⁵

per:ⁿ ma:³ dtae:² na:³

To come from

Where does he come from?

I'm coming from the market.

My father and mother are coming from the rice-field.

Do you come from your home?

They come from the rice-field.

1-3 อยู (See also p.153/5-5)

พ่ออยู่ที่ไหน

ខ្ញុំនៅ

yu:²

poh:² chao:⁵ yu:² sai:⁴

kohy:⁶ yu:² ban:⁵

To be at (in, etc.)

Where is your father?

I am at home.

ເຈົ້າຢູ່ບ້ານບໍ່

ຕອນແລງ ລາວຢູ່ບ້ານ

chao:⁵ yu¹ ban⁵ boh²

dtohn¹ laeng³ lao³ yu¹ ban⁵

Are you at home?

In the evening he is at home.

1-4 ຫາ

ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປຫາເຈົ້າ

ລາວມາຫາຂ້ອຍ

ຕອນແລງ ຊິໄປຫາພໍ່

ເພິ່ນມາຫາແມ່ຂ້ອຍ

ha⁴

kohy⁶ si:² bpai:¹ ha⁴ chao:⁵

lao³ ma³ ha⁴ kohy⁶

dtohn¹ laeng³ si:² bpai:¹ ha⁴ poh²

per:n² ma³ ha⁴ mae² kohy⁶

(Go, come) to see

I'll go to see you.

He comes to see me.

In the evening (I) will go to see
(my) father.

He came to see my mother.

1-5

ກໍໄດ້

ເຈົ້າມາດຽວນີ້ກໍໄດ້

ຕອນແລງກໍໄດ້ ດຽວນີ້ກໍໄດ້

ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປກໍໄດ້

ລາວໄປຫາເພິ່ນກໍໄດ້

goh¹ dai:⁵

chao:⁵ ma³ diaw¹ ni⁵ goh¹ dai:⁵

dtohn¹ laeng³ goh¹ dai:⁵

diaw¹ ni⁵ goh¹ dai:⁵

kohy⁶ si:² bpai:¹ goh¹ dai:⁵

lao³ bpai:¹ ha⁴ per:n² goh¹ dai:⁵

Can, It's all right to...,
will do, okay

You can come now.

Evening is okay; now is okay too.

It's all right for me to go.

He can go and see him.

ບົດ ຮຽນ ທີ່ ສິ່ງ

1. ຄຳ ສບາຍດີ
2. ຈິດ ສບາຍດີ
3. ຄຳ ເຈົ້າຊີໂປໂສ
4. ຈິດ ຊີໂປນາ ເຈົ້ານາແຕ່ໂສ
5. ຄຳ ນາແຕ່ຕລາດ
6. ຈິດ ແມ່ເຈົ້າສບາຍດີ ບໍ່
7. ຄຳ ຂອບໃຈ ແມ່ຂອບສບາຍດີ ດຽວນີ້ເຈົ້າຢູ່ບ້ານ ບໍ່
8. ຈິດ ພໍ່ຢູ່ ເພິ່ນໂປນາແລ້ວ
9. ຄຳ ຕອນແລງ ເພິ່ນຢູ່ບ້ານ ບໍ່
10. ຈິດ ຢູ່ ຕອນແລງເຈົ້ານາຫາເພິ່ນ ກໍໄດ້
11. ຄຳ ເອີ້ນ ຂອບຊີໂປຫາເພິ່ນ
12. ຈິດ ໄປກ່ອນເດີ ຂອບຊີໂປນາ
13. ຄຳ ລາກ່ອນ

BO:T³ HIAN³ TI² NEU:NG²

1. Ka:m³: Sa:³ bai⁴ di¹.
2. Chi:t³: Sa:³ bai⁴ di¹.
3. Ka:m³: Chao:⁵ si:² bpai:¹ sai:⁴?
4. Chi:t³: Si:² bpai:¹ na³. Chao:⁵ ma³ dtae² sai:⁴ ?
5. Ka:m³: Ma³ dtae² dta:³ lat⁶.
6. Chi:t³: Mae² chao:⁵ sa:³ bai⁴ di¹ boh².
7. Ka:m³: Kohp⁴ chai:¹. Mae² kohy⁴ sa:³ bai⁴ di¹. Diaw¹ ni⁵ poh² chao:⁵ yu² ban⁵ boh² ?
8. Chi:t³: Poh² boh² yu². Per:n² bpai:¹ na³ laew⁵.
9. Ka:m³: Dtohn¹ laeng³ per:n² yu² ban⁵ boh²?
10. Chi:t³: Yu²dtohn¹ laeng³ chao:⁵ ma³ ha⁴ per:n² goh¹ dai:⁵.
11. Ka:m³: Er¹ kohy⁴ si:² bpai:¹ ha⁴ per:n².
12. Chi:t³: Bpai:¹ gohn² der¹. Kohy⁴ si:² bpai:¹ na³.
13. Ka:m³: La³ gohn².

LESSON 1: COMING AND GOING

1. Kham: Hello.
2. Chit: Hello.
3. Kham: Where are you going?
4. Chit: I'm going to the rice-field. Where are you coming from?
5. Kham: From the market.
6. Chit: How is your mother?
7. Kham: Thank you. My mother is fine. Is your father at home now?
8. Chit: He's not there. He went to the rice-field already.
9. Kham: This evening will he be at home?
10. Chit: Yes. Tonight you can come to see him.
11. Kham: Okay. I will go to see him.
12. Chit: Good-bye. I will go to the rice-field.
13. Kham: Good-bye.

LESSON 2: INTRODUCTIONS

Substitution Exercise

ສບາຍດີ ທ່ານ	ສບາຍດີ	(See also p.145/2.2.4a)
ສບາຍດີ	ສບາຍດີ ທ່ານ	
ສບາຍດີ ຍິນດີຮູ້ຈັກທ່ານ		
ຍິນດີຮູ້ຈັກເຈົ້າ		
sa:³ bai⁴ di¹ tan²		sa:³ bai⁴ di¹
sa:³ bai⁴ di¹		sa:³ bai⁴ di¹ tan²
sa:³ bai⁴ di¹ nyi:n³ di¹ hu⁵ cha:k³ tan²		
nyi:n³ di¹ hu⁵ cha:k³ chao:⁵		
Hello, sir.		Hello.
Hello		Hello, sir.
Hello, I'm glad to know you, sir.		
I'm glad to know you.		

ເຈົ້າ	ປາກພາສາລາວ	ບໍ່	(See also p.153/5.6)
ລາວ		ເປັນບໍ່	
ເພິ່ນ			ເປັນ
			ເປັນ ປາກເກັ່ງຫຼາຍ
ນາຍຄຣູ ປາກເປັນຫຼາຍພາສາ			ເປັນ ເພິ່ນຮູ້ຈັກຫຼາຍພາສາ

chao:⁵	bpak⁶ pa³ sa⁴ lao³	boh²	bpe:n¹
lao³		bpe:n¹ boh²	bpe:n¹, bpak⁶ ge:ng² lai⁴
per:n²			
nai³ ku³ bpak⁶ bpe:n¹ lai⁴ pa³ sa⁴ boh²			bpe:n¹, per:n¹ hu⁵ cha:k³ lai⁴ pa³ sa⁴

You	speak Lao	?	Yes.
He		can?	Yes, he speaks very well.
They			
Can the teacher speak many languages?			Yes, he knows many languages.

ເຈົ້າ	ໄປ	ຕອນ	ຍ່ື	ໄປ ແຕ່ ດວງນິ້ຍໄປ
ລາວ	ນາ	ດວງນິ້ຍໄປ ແຕ່ ຕອນແລງຊິໄປ		
chao: ⁵	bpai: ¹	dta: ³	lat ⁴	boh ²
bpai: ¹ , dtae ² diaw ¹ ni ⁵ boh ² bpai: ¹				
lao ³		na ³	diaw ¹ ni ⁵ boh ² bpai: ¹ dtae ² dtohn ¹ laeng ³ si: ² bpai: ¹	
(Are)	you	going to	market	?
(Is)	he		the field	
				Yes, but I'm not going now.
				I'm not going now, but this evening I'll go.

ພໍ່ເຈົ້າ ຊິນາຍນິ້ຍ	ນາ ແຕ່ ດວງນິ້ ຍັງຢູ່ບ້ານ
ເພິ່ນ ນາທາເຈົ້າຍ່ື	ຍ່ືນາທາຂ້ອຍ ແຕ່ ຊິໄປທາງຂ້ອຍຢູ່ບ້ານ
poh ² chao: ⁵ si: ² ma ³ ni ⁵ boh ²	ma ³ , dtae ² diaw ¹ ni ⁵ nya:ng ³ yu ² ban ⁵
per:n ² ma ³ ha ⁴ chao: ⁵ boh ²	boh ² ma ³ ha ⁴ kohy ⁴ dtae ² si: ² bpai: ¹ ha ⁴ mu ² kohy ⁴ yu ² ban ⁵
Will your father come here?	Yes, but now he's still at home.
Will they come to see you?	He won't come to see me but he will see my friend at home.

ເຈົ້າມີອ້າຍຍ່ື	ມີ , ມີອ້າຍຄົນນຶ່ງ	(See also p.147/2.2.4b)
ລາວ ມີເອື້ອຍຍ່ື	ມີເອື້ອຍສອງຄົນ	
ເພິ່ນ ມີອ້າຍຍ່ື	ມີ , ມີອ້າຍສອງຄົນ ມີນອງສາມຄົນ	
ລາວ ມີນອງຍ່ື	ຍ່ືມີ , ແຕ່ ມີອ້າຍເອື້ອຍຫາຍຄົນ	
chao: ⁵ mi ³ ay ⁵ boh ²	mi ³ , mi ³ ay ⁵ ko:n ³ neu:ng ²	
lao ³ mi ³ euay ⁵ boh ²	mi ³ , mi ³ euay ⁵ sohng ⁴ ko:n ³	
per:n ² mi ³ ay ⁵ boh ²	mi ³ , mi ³ ay ⁵ sohng ⁴ ko:n ³ mi ³ nohng ⁵ sam ⁴ ko:n ³	
lao ³ mi ³ nohng ⁵ boh ²	boh ² mi ³ , dtae ⁴ mi ³ ay ⁵ euay ⁵ lai ⁵ ko:n ¹	
Do you have older brothers?	Yes, I have one older brother.	
Does he have older sisters?	Yes, he has two older sisters.	
Do they have older brothers?	Yes, they have 2 older brothers and 3 younger siblings.	
Does he have younger siblings?	No, but he has many older brothers and sisters.	

ຂໍ້ ນ)	ແນງ	ພໍ່ຂອງ
ຍໍ ນນ		ແມ່ຂອງ
		ອາຍຸຂອງ
		ເອົາຂອງ
		ນອນຂອງ

ni ⁵	maen ²	poh ² kohy ⁶
na:n ⁵		mae ² kohy ⁶
		ay ⁵ kohy ⁶
		euay ⁵ kohy ⁶
		nohng ⁵ kohy ⁶

(See also p.153/5.5)

This	is	my father.
That		my mother.
		my older brother.
		my older sister.
		my younger sibling.

ທານ	ແນງ	ນາຍຄຣຸ	ປໍ່
ພໍ່ລາວ		ຄິນລາວ	
ແມ່ລາວ			
ອາຍຸລາວ			
ເອົາຂອງລາວ			

tan ²	maen ²	nai ³ ku ³	bch ²
poh ² lao ³		ko:n ³ lao ³	
mae ² lao ³			
ay ⁵ lao ³			
euay ⁵ lao ³			

Sir	is	a teacher ?
His father		a Lao.
His mother		
His older brother		
His older sister		

Vocabulary Exercise

2-1 ສອນ

ເພິ່ນສອນ ທັງສີ ຢູ່ວິທຍາລັຍ

ຂອບສອນພາສາລາວ ຢູ່ວິທຍາລັຍ

ລາວສອນທັງສີຢູ່ບ້ານ

ເອີອຍຂອບ ສອນທັງສີ

sohn⁺

per:n² sohn⁺ na:ng⁺ seu⁺ yu²
wi:² ta:² nya³ lai:³

kohy^b sohn⁺ pa³ sa⁺ lao³ yu²
wi:² ta:² nya³ lai:³

lao³ sohn⁺ na:ng⁺ seu⁺ yu² ban⁵

euay⁵ kohy⁴ sohn⁺ na:ng⁺ seu⁺

To teach

He (she) teaches at high school.

I teach Lao at a high school.

He (she) teaches at home.

My elder sister teaches.

2-2 ຮຽນ

ນ້ອງຂອບຮຽນທັງສີຢູ່ບ້ານ

ຂອບຮຽນຢູ່ ວິທຍາລັຍ

ເພິ່ນຮຽນ ພາສາລາວ ນຳນາຍຄຣູກິນລາວ

ລາວຮຽນນຳຜູ້ລາວ

hian³

nohng⁵ kohy⁴ hian³ na:ng⁺ seu⁺ yu²
ban⁵

kohy⁴ hian³ yu² wi:² ta:² nya³ lai:³

per:n² hian³ pa³ sa⁺ lao³ na:m³
nai³ ku³ ko:n³ lao³

lao³ hian³ na:m³ mu² lao³

To study

My younger brothers (sisters) study at home.

I study at high school.

He (she) studies the Lao language with a Lao teacher.

He (she) studies with his friend(s).

2-3 ປາກ

ເຈົ້າ ປາກພາສາລາວບໍ່

ລາວ ປາກພາສາລາວ

ຄົນລາວ ປາກພາສາລາວ

ເພິ່ນປາກຫຼາຍພາສາ

bpak⁴

chao:⁵ bpak⁴ pa³ sa⁺ lao³ boh²

lao³ bpak⁴ pa³ sa⁺ lao³

ko:n³ lao³ bpak⁴ pa³ sa⁺ lao³

per:n² bpak⁴ lai⁴ pa³ sa⁺

To speak

Do you speak Lao?

He (she) speaks Lao.

Lao people speak Lao.

They speak many languages.

2-4 ເກີ້ງ

ເຈົ້າ ປາກພາສາລາວເກີ້ງ

ນາຍຄູ ສອນໜັງສືເກີ້ງຫຼາຍ

ລາວຮຽນເກີ້ງ

ge:ng²

chao:^f bpak⁴ pa³ sa⁴ lao³ ge:ng²

nai³ ku¹ sohn⁴ na:ng⁴ seu⁴
ge:ng² lai⁴

Lao³ hian³ ge:ng²

To be good at..., skillful,
can (do something) well.

You speak Lao well.

The teacher teaches very well.

He learns well.

2-5 ຮູ້ຈັກ

ເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກລາວບໍ່

ລາວ ຮູ້ຈັກພາສາລາວ

ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້ຈັກລາວ

ຂ້ອຍຮູ້ຈັກວິທະຍາລັດ ຢູ່ໃສ

ລາວ ບໍ່ຮູ້ຈັກ ບ້ານນາຍຄູ ຢູ່ໃສ

hu^f cha:k³

chao:^f hu^f cha:k³ lao³ boh²

lao³ hu^f cha:k³ pa³ sa⁴ lao³

kohy⁶ boh² hu^f cha:k³ lao³

kohy⁶ hu^f cha:k³ wi:² ta:² nya³
lai:³ yu² sai:⁴

lao³ boh² hu^f cha:k³ ban^f nai³
ku² yu² sai:⁴

To know

Do you know him?

He (she) knows Lao.

I don't know him.

I know where the high school is.

He (she) does not know where the
teacher's house is.

2-6 ໄປຮຽນ (See also p.153/5.3)

ໄປວິທະຍາລັດ ຮຽນໜັງສື

ນາຍານ ສອນພາສາລາວ

ໄປຍານນາຍຄູ ຮຽນພາສາລາວນຳເພິ່ນ

bpai:¹ hian³

bpai:¹ wi:² ta:² nya³ lai:³ hian³
na:ng⁴ seu⁴

ma² ban^f sohn⁴ pa³ sa⁴ lao³

bpai:¹ ban^f nai³ ku² hian³ pa³
sa⁴ lao³ na:m³ per:n²

To go to study

I go to high school to study.

He comes to my home and teach Lao.

I go to the teacher's house and
study Lao with him.

2-7 ຫຼາຍ (See also p.143/2.1.1)

ຂ້ອຍມີອ້າຍນ້ອງຫຼາຍຄົນ

ລາວມີໝູ່ຄົນລາວຫຼາຍ

ມີຫຼາຍ

ພໍ່ຮູ້ຈັກຫຼາຍ

ລາວຮຽນພັງສື່ຫຼາຍ

ດີຫຼາຍ

lai⁺

kohy⁶ mi³ ay⁵ nohng⁵ lai⁺ ko:n³

lao³ mi³ mu² ko:n³ lao³ lai⁺

mi³ lai⁺

poh² hu⁵ cha:k³ lai⁺

lao³ hian³ na:ng⁴ seu⁴ lai⁺

di¹ lai⁺

Very, Much, Many

I have many brothers and sisters.

He (she) has many Lao friends.

There are many things.

Father knows a lot.

He learns a lot.

Very good.

2-8 ຍັງ

ລາວຍັງມີຫຼາຍ

ຂ້ອຍຍັງຮູ້ຈັກ

ເື່ອນ ຍັງຢູ່ບ້ານ

ພໍ່ແລະແມ່ ຍັງຢູ່ນາ

nya:ng³

lao³ nya:ng³ mi³ lai⁺

kohy⁶ nya:ng³ hu⁵ cha:k³

per:n² nya:ng³ yu² ban⁵

poh² lae:³ mae² nya:ng³ yu² na³

Still, Not yet.

He still has much (many).

I still know about it.

He is still at home.

Father and mother are still in the rice-field.

2-9 ແຕ່

ພໍ່ ຢູ່ບ້ານ ແຕ່ແມ່ບໍ່ຢູ່

ລາວ ປາກພາສາລາວ ແຕ່ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ເປັນ

dtae²

poh² yu² ban⁵ dtae² mae² boh² yu²

lao³ bpak⁶ pa³ sa⁴ lao³ dtae² kohy⁶
boh² bpe:n¹

But

Father is at home, but mother is not.

He speaks Lao but, I can't.

ເພິ່ນ ປາກເປັນ ແຕ່ ນ້ອງເພິ່ນ ປາກບໍ່ເປັນ

per:n² bpak⁴ bpe:n¹ dtae² nohg⁵
per:n² bpak⁶ boh² bpe:n¹

He can speak, but his younger brother (sister) can't.

ດຽວນີ້ ບໍ່ໄປ ແຕ່ ຕອນແລງຈິໄປ

diaw¹ ni⁵ boh² bpai:¹ dtae² dtohn¹
laeng² si:² bpai:¹

Now I won't go, but in the evening I will.

ອ້າຍໄປແລ້ວ ແຕ່ ເອື້ອຍຍັງຢູ່ບ້ານ

ay⁵ bpai:¹ laew⁵ dtae² euay⁵
nya:ng³ yu⁴ ban⁵

Elder brother went, but elder sister is still at home.

2-10 ເຊີນ

sern³

Please

ເຊີນ ນັ່ງຢູ່ນີ້

sern³ na:ng² yu² ni⁵

Please sit here.

ເຊີນ ໄປດີ

sern³ bpai:¹ di¹

So long.

ເຊີນ ນາຍ້ານຂອງ

sern³ ma³ ban⁵ kohy⁶

Please come to my house.

2-11 ມາ

na:m³

With

ໄປນຳເຈົ້າ

bpai:¹ na:m³ chao:⁵

(I'll) go with you.

ມານຳລາວບໍ່

ma³ na:m³ lao³ boh²

Did (you) come with him?

ເຈົ້າມານຳຂອງບໍ່

chao:⁵ ma³ na:m³ kohy⁶ boh²

Will you come with me?

ບົດ ຮຽນ ທີ່ ສອງ

1. ຄຳ ນີ້ແນ່ນ້ຳຂອຍ
2. ມີນລາ ສບາຍດີ ຍິນດີ ຮູ້ຈັກທ່ານ
3. ພໍ່ຂອງຄຳ ສບາຍດີ ທ່ານ
4. ຄຳ ທ່ານມີນລາ ແນ່ນນາຍຄຣຸສອນສັງຄົມ ຢູ່ວິທະຍາລັຍ
5. ພໍ່ຂອງຄຳ ທ່ານປາກພາສາລາວເກັ່ງ ຮຽນຢູ່ໄສ
6. ມີນລາ ຈ້າງນາຍຄຣຸສິນລາວ ຮຽນຢູ່ບ້ານ
7. ພໍ່ຂອງຄຳ ໄອ່ ດີຫຼາຍ
8. ຄຳ ແນ່ ນີ້ ແນ່ນທ່ານມີນລາ ເພິ່ນປາກລາວເປັນ
 ນີ້ ແນ່ນແນ່ຂອຍ ນັ້ນ ແນ່ນອ່າຍແລະເອີ້ອຍ ຂອຍຍັງມີນອງຄົມທົ່ງ
 ແຕ່ລາວຍັງຢູ່ບ້ານ ດຽວນີ້ ຫຼິ້ນຢູ່ນອກນ້ຳໝໍລາວ.
9. ພໍ່ຂອງຄຳ ເຊິນນັ້ງດີ ທ່ານ
10. ແນ່ຂອງຄຳ ເຊິນ
11. ມີນລາ ຂອບໃຈ

BO:T³ HIAN³ TI² SOHNG⁴

1. Ka:m³: Ni⁵ maen² poh² kohy⁶.
2. Mi:n³ la³: Sa:¹ bai⁴ di¹. Nyi:n³ di¹ hu⁵ cha:k³ tan².
3. Poh² kohng⁴ Ka:m³: Sa:¹ bai⁴ di¹ tan².
4. Ka:m³: Tan² Mi:n³ la³ maen² nai³ ku³ sohn⁴ nang⁴ seu⁴ yu² wi:⁴
ta:⁴ nya³ lai:³.
5. Poh² kohng⁴ Ka:m³: Tan² bpak⁴ pa³ sa⁴ lao³ ge:ng.² Hian³ yu² sai:⁴?
6. Mi:n³ la³: Chang⁵ nai³ ku³ ko:n³ lao³ hian³ yu² ban⁵.
7. Poh² kohng⁴ Ka:m³: O², di¹ lai⁴.
8. Ka:m³: Mae⁴, ni⁵ maen² Tan² Mi:n³ la³ Per:n² bpak⁴ lao³ bpe:n.¹
maen² mae² kohy.⁴ Na:n⁵ maen² ay⁵ lae:² euay⁵. Kohy⁴
nyang³ mi³ nohng⁵ ko:n³ neu:ng² dtae² lao³ boh² yu²
ban⁵ diaw¹ ni⁵ lin⁴ yu² nohk⁵ na:m³ mu² lao³.
9. Poh² kohng⁴ Ka:m³: Sern³ nang² dti¹, tan².
10. Mae² Kohng⁴ Ka:m³: Sern³.
11. Mi:n³ la³: Kohp⁴ chai:¹.

LESSON 2: INTRODUCTIONS

1. Kham: This is my father.
2. Mr. Miller: Hello. I'm happy to know you sir.
3. Kham's father: Hello, sir.
4. Kham: Mr. Miller is a teacher teaching at the high school.
5. Kham's father: Sir, you speak Lao well. Where did you study?
6. Mr. Miller: I hired a Lao teacher and studied at home.
7. Kham's father: Oh, very good.
8. Kham: Mother, this is Mr. Miller. He can speak Lao. This is my mother. That's my older brother and older sister. Also I have one younger brother, but he's not at home now. He's still playing outside with his friends.
9. Kham's father: Please sit down, sir.
10. Kham's mother: Please.
11. Mr. Miller: Thank you.

LESSON 3: THE NEIGHBORS, PART 1

Substitution Exercise

ຂອຍ	ຊື່ວ່າ	ທ້າວແສງ
ລາວ		ນາງບຸນທອງ
ໃ້ນ		
ນອງຂອຍ		
ນອງລາວ		

kohy ⁴	seu ² wa ²	tao ⁵ saeng ⁴
lao ³		nang ³ bu:n ¹ tohng ³
per:n ²		
nohng ⁵ kohy ⁴		
nohng ⁵ lao ⁴		

My	name is	Mr. Seng.
Her		Mrs. Bounthong.
Their		
My younger sibling's		
His younger sibling's		

ເຈົ້າ	ກັບ	ຂອຍ	ຮູ້ຈັກກັນດີ
ພໍ່		ເອົ້ອຍ	ຮັກກັນຫຼາຍ
ແມ່		ເມັງເຈົ້າ	
ອາຍ		ທ້າວແສງ	
		ນາງບຸນທອງ	

chao: ⁵	ga:p ³	kohy ⁴	hu ⁵ cha:k ³ ga:n ¹ di ¹
poh ²		euay ⁵	ha:k ² ga:n ¹ lai ⁴
mae ⁴		mia: ³ chao: ⁵	
ay ⁵		tao ⁵ saeng ⁴	
		nang ³ bu:n ¹ tohng ³	

You	and	I	know each other well.
Father		older sister	like each other a lot.
My mother		your wife	
Older brother		Mr. Seng	
		Mrs. Bounthong	

ລາວ	ເຮັດການຢູ່	ກະຊວງ
ຜູ້		ໂຮງການ
ທ່ານ		ໃສ
ນາກາ		ວິທະຍາລັຍ

lao ³	he:t ² gan ¹ yu ²	ga: ³ suang ³
per:n ²		hong ³ gan ¹
tao ⁵ ka:m ³		sai: ⁴
nang ³ ka:m ⁵		wi: ¹ ta: ² nya ³ lai: ³

(See also p.149/3.1)

He	is working at	the ministry.
He		the office.
Mr. Kham		where?
Mrs. Kham		at the high school.

ບ້ານ ຂອງ	ຢູ່ໃກ້	ບ້ານເຈົ້າ
ຜູ້		ບ້ານທ່ານແສງ
ຂະເຈົ້າ		ໂຮງການ
		ກະຊວງ
		ວິທະຍາລັຍ

ban ⁵ kohy ⁶	yu ² gai: ⁵	ban ⁵ chao: ⁵
per:n ²		ban ⁵ tao ⁵ saeng ⁴
ka: ³ chao: ³		hong ³ gan ¹
		ga: ³ suang ³
		wi: ¹ ta: ² nya ³ lai: ³

My house	is near	your house.
He		Mr. Seng's house.
They		the office.
		the ministry.
		the high school.

ຂອງ	ມີ	ເຮືອນ	ຫຼັງນັ້ນ
ລາວ			ສອງຫຼັງ
ຂະເຈົ້າ			ສາມຫຼັງ
		ສາມ	ຄົນດຽວ
			ສອງຄົນ
		ສາມຄົນລາວ	ຄົນນຶ່ງ
			ສອງຄົນ
			ຫຼາຍຄົນ

kohy ⁶	mi ³	heuan ³	la:ng ⁴ neu:ng ³
lao ³			sohng ⁴ la:ng ⁴
ka: ³ chao: ³			sam ⁴ la:ng ⁴
		luk ⁵	ko:n ³ diaw ¹
			sohng ⁴ ko:n ³
		mu ² ko:n ³ lao	ko:n ³ neu:ng ²
			sohng ⁴ ko:n ³
			lai ⁴ ko:n ³

I	have	house	one building.
He			two buildings.
They			three buildings.
		children	one person.
			two persons.
		Lao friend	one person.
			two persons.
			many persons.

(See also p.150/4.2)

Vocabulary Exercise

3-1 ຊື່ວ່າ

ຂອບຊື່ວ່າ ທ່າວຄຳ

ເຈົ້າ ຊື່ວ່າ ນາງບຸນທອງບໍ່

ເພິ່ນ ຊື່ວ່າ ທ່ານມິນລາ

ທ່ານ ຊື່ວ່າ ນິນລາບໍ່

seu² wa²

kohy⁴ seu² wa² tao⁵ ka:m³

chao:⁵ seu² wa² nang³ bu:n¹ tchng³
boh²

per:n² seu² wa² tan² mi:n³ la³

tan² seu² wa² mi:n³ la³ boh²

Name is,...

My name is Thao Kham.

Is your name Nang Bounthong?

His name is Mr. Miller.

Is your name Miller?

3-2 ກັນ

ຮູ້ຈັກກັນ ແຕ່ ບໍ່ຮັກກັນຫຼາຍ

ເຈົ້າ ກັບ ລາວ ສອນກັນ ກໍໄດ້

ຂະເຈົ້າ ອ້າຍນ້ອງກັນ

ນ້ອງທີ່ນັກນຳຢູ່ນອກ (ນ້ອງທີ່ນັກນຳກັນຢູ່ນອກ)

ga:n¹

hu⁵ cha:k³ ga:n¹ dtae² boh² ha:k⁴
ga:n¹ lai⁴

chao:⁵ ga:p³ lao³ sohn⁴ ga:n¹ goh¹
dai:⁵

ka³ chao:⁵ ay⁵ nohng⁵ ga:n¹

nohng⁵ lin⁶ ga:n¹ yu² nohk⁵
(nohng⁵ lin⁶ na:m³ ga:n¹ yu² nohk⁵)

he:t² gan¹

To each other, together

We know each other, but don't like much.

You and he can teach each other.

They are brothers.

My little sisters and brothers are playing together outside.

3-3 ເຮັດການ

ເພິ່ນເປັນນາຍຄູ ເຮັດການ ຢູ່ລິທະຍາລັຍ

ເຈົ້າເຮັດການ ຢູ່ໃສ

ແມ່ ບໍ່ເຮັດການຢູ່ບ້ານ

ລາວ ເຮັດການ ຢູ່ກະຊວງ

per:n² bpe:n¹ nai³ ku³ he:t² gan¹
yu² wi:² ta:² nya³ lai:³

chao:⁵ he:t² gan¹ yu² sai:⁴

mae² boh² he:t² gan¹ yu² ban⁵

lac⁵ he:t² gan¹ yu² ga:³ suang³

To work

He is teacher. He works at the school.

Where do you work?

Mother does not go to work. She is at home.

He is working in the ministry.

3-4 ແລະ

ຂ້ອຍມີອ້າຍຄົນນຶ່ງ ແລະເອື້ອຍຄົນນຶ່ງ

ນ້ອງຂ້ອຍ ຮູ້ຈັກທ່ານມິນລາ ແລະເມັງເພິ່ນດີ

ຂະເຈົ້າ ຮູ້ຈັກກັນໄດ້ສາມປີແລວແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ

lae:²

kohy⁴ mi³ ay⁵ ko:n³ neu:ng² lae:² euay⁵
ko:n³ neu:ng²

nohng⁵ kohy⁶ hu⁵ cha:k³ tan² mi:n³ la⁷
lae:² mia:³ per:n² di¹

ka:⁷ chao:⁵ hu⁵ cha:k³ ga:n¹ dai:⁵
sam³ bpi¹ lae:² dtaeng² gan³ laew⁵

bpe:n¹

per:n² bpe:n¹ ka⁴ lat⁵ sa:² gan¹

lao⁷ bpe:n¹ luk⁵ kohng⁷ tan² bu:n¹
tohng³

kohy⁶ bpe:n¹ ko:n³ lao³

ay⁵ kohng⁴ lao³ bpe:n¹ nai³ ku³

per:n² bpe:n¹ mia:³

And

I have one elder brother and one elder sister.

My younger brother knows Mr. Miller and his wife well.

They knew each other for three years and got married.

To be

He is an official.

She is a child of Mr. Bounthong.

I am a Lao.

His elder brother is a teacher

She is (his) wife.

3-5 ເປັນ (See also p.153/5.5)

ເພິ່ນເປັນ ຂ້າຮາຊາການ

ລາວເປັນລູກຂອງທ່ານບຸນທອງ

ຂ້ອຍເປັນຄົນລາວ

ອ້າຍຂອງລາວເປັນນາຍຄູ

ເພິ່ນເປັນເມັງ

ta:m³ ma:² da¹

ta:m³ ma:² da¹ lao³ he:t² gan¹ yu²
hong³ gan¹

ta:m³ ma:² da¹ per:n² yu² ban⁵
dtohn¹ laeng²

ta:m³ ma:² da¹ cuay⁵ kohy⁶ bpai:¹
dta:⁷ lat⁵ mae² boh² bpai:¹

ta:m³ ma:² da¹ tao⁵ saeng⁴ ma³ ha⁴
kohy⁶ yu² ban⁵

ta:m³ ma:² da¹ nohng⁵ bpai:¹ beung²
wiak⁵ yu² na³

Usually, on the whole, as a rule

He usually works at the office.

On the whole, he stays at home in the evening.

As a rule, my elder sister goes to market. Mother doesn't (go).

Usually Thao Seng comes to see me at home.

Usually, my brother goes to inspect work in the rice-field.

3-6 ທົ່ມນະດາ

ທົ່ມນະດາ ລາວ ເຮັດການ ຢູ່ໂຮງການ

ທົ່ມນະດາ ເພິ່ນຢູ່ບ້ານຕອນແລງ

ທົ່ມນະດາ ເອື້ອຍຂ້ອຍໄປຕາລາດ ແນ່ນໄປ

ທົ່ມນະດາ ທ້າວແສງ ມາຫາຂ້ອຍ ຢູ່ບ້ານ

ທົ່ມນະດາ ນ້ອງໄປເບິ່ງວຽກຢູ່ນ້າ

ບາງເທື່ອ ລາວ ມາຫາຂ້ອຍ

ບາງເທື່ອ ລາວບໍ່ມາ

ບາງເທື່ອມີ ບາງເທື່ອບໍ່ມີ

ບາງເທື່ອ ນາຍຄູ ໄປເບິ່ງວຽກຢູ່ນາ

bang' teua'

bang' teua² lao³ ma³ ha⁴ kohy⁶

bang' teua² lao³ boh² ma³

bang' teua² mi³ bang' teua² boh² mi³

bang' teua² nai³ ku³ bpai:¹ ber:ng⁴ wiak⁵ yu² na³

Sometimes

Sometimes he comes to see me.

Sometimes he does not come.

Sometimes we have it, sometimes we don't.

Sometimes the teacher goes to look at the work in the rice-field.

ບາງເທື່ອ ຂ້ອຍໄປບ້ານນອກກົມ

ບາງເທື່ອ ລາວບໍ່ໄປນາກົມ

ຂ້ອຍມີຄອບຄົວ ອ້າຍກົມ ແລະນ້ອງກົມ

ຢູ່ວິທຍາລັຍ ນາຍຄູສອນພາສາລາວກົມ

..goh' mi³

bang' teua² kohy⁴ bpai:¹ ban⁵ nohk⁶ goh' mi³

bang' teua² lao³ boh² bpai:¹ na³ goh' mi³

kohy⁴ mi³ kohp⁵ kua³ ay⁵ goh' mi³ lae:² nohng⁵ goh' mi³

yu² wi:² ta:² nya³ lai:³ nai² ku² sohn⁴ pa³ sa⁴ lao³ goh' mi³

It happens that..., also

Sometimes it happens that I go to the country-side.

Sometimes it happens that he does not go to rice-field.

I have a family. I have elder brothers and younger siblings as well.

At school we also have a Lao teacher.

ໄດ້.....ແລ້ວ

(See also p.152/5.2a)

ຂ້ອຍເປັນຂ້າຮາຊາການ ໄດ້ສາມປີແລ້ວ

ເພິ່ນ ຢູ່ລາວໄດ້ຫ້າປີແລ້ວ

ຂະເຈົ້າ ໄປຢູ່ຫົມ ໄດ້ນຶ່ງປີແລ້ວ

ເອີອຍຂ້ອຍແຕ່ງງານ ໄດ້ສີ່ປີແລ້ວ

ຂ້ອຍ ຮູ້ຈັກລາວໄດ້ຫຼາຍປີແລ້ວ

dai:⁵ .. laew⁵

kohy⁴ bpe:n¹ ka⁴ lat⁵ sa:² gan' dai:⁵ sam⁴ bpi' laew⁵

per:n² yu² lao³ dai:⁵ ha⁴ bpi' laew⁵

ka³ chao:⁵ bpai:¹ yu² ha:n⁴ dai:⁵ bpi' neu:ng² laew⁵

euay⁵ kohy⁴ dtaeng² ngan³ dai:⁵ si² bpi' laew⁵

kohy⁴ hu⁵ cha:k² lao³ dai:⁵ lai⁴ bpi' laew⁵

Since....., ago, for...

I have been an official for 3 years.

He has been in Laos for 5 years.

They went to live there a year ago.

My elder sister got married 4 years ago.

I have known him for many years.

ບົດ ຮຽນ ທີ່ ສາມ

1. ຂ້ອຍ ມີພູຄົນລາວຄົນນຶ່ງຊື່ວ່າທ້າວແສງ.
2. ທ້າວແສງກັບຂ້ອຍຮູ້ຈັກກັນດີ ແລະຮັກກັນຫຼາຍ.
3. ທ້າວແສງເຮັດການຢູ່ກະຊວງ
4. ລາວເປັນຂ້າຮາຊາການ.
5. ທັມມະດາ ລາວເຮັດການຢູ່ ໂຮງການ ແຕ່ບາງເທື່ອໄປບ້ານນອກເບິ່ງວຽກກໍມີ.
6. ລາວ ມີເຮືອນຫຼັງນຶ່ງຢູ່ໄກ້ບ້ານຂ້ອຍ ແລະຢູ່ນຳຄອບຄົວຂອງລາວ
7. ລາວແຕ່ງ ງານໄດ້ສາມປີແລ້ວ
8. ເມັ່ງລາວຊື່ວ່າ ນາງບຸນທອງ
9. ຂະເຈົ້າມີລູກຄົນດຽວ.

1. Kohy⁶ mi³ mu² ko:n³ lao³ ko:n³ neu:ng² seu² wa² Tao⁵ Saeng⁴.
2. Tao⁵ saeng⁴ ga:p³ kohy⁶ hu⁵ cha:k³ ga:n¹ di¹ lae:² ha:k² ga:n¹, lai⁴.
3. Tao⁵ saeng⁴ he:t² gan¹ yu² ga:³ suang³.
4. Lao³ bpe:n¹ ka⁶ la:t⁵ sa² gan¹.
5. Ta:m³ ma² da¹ lao³ he:t² gan¹ yu² hong³ gan¹ dtae² bang¹ teua² bpai:¹ ban⁵ nohk⁵ ber:ng² wiak⁵ goh¹ mi³.
6. Lao³ mi³ heuan³ lang⁴ neu:ng² yu² gai:⁵ ban⁵ kohy⁶ lae:² yu² na:m³ kohp⁵ kua³ kohng⁴ lao³.
7. Lao³ dtaeng² ngan³ dai:⁵ sam⁴ bpi¹ laew⁵.
8. Mia³ lao³ seu² wa² Nang³ Bu:n¹ Tohng³. Ka:³ chao:⁵ mi³ luk⁵ ko:n³ diaw¹.

LESSON 3: THE NEIGHBORS, PART 1

1. I have one Lao friend named Thao Seng.
2. Thao Seng and I know each other well and like each other very much.
3. Thao Seng works at a ministry.
4. He is a government official.
5. Usually he works at the office, but sometimes he goes to rural areas to inspect work.
6. He has one house near my house and he lives with his family.
7. He married 3 years ago.
8. His wife is named Nang Bounthong.
9. They have one child.

LESSON 4: THE NEIGHBORS, PART 2

Substitution Exercise

ຂາວເຈົ້າ	ນິລຸກ ລຸກຄົນ	ນິສັງກຸດ ນິສັງກຸດ
ລາວ ເຈົ້າ	ນິນອງ ນິຄອບຄົວ	ສີ່ທ່າຄົນ ຄົນດຽວ
ຢູ່ນີ້	ນິຕິມ	ສາມສິບຄົນ
ບ້ານເຈົ້າ		ຫ້າຄົນ
ລາວ		ສິບຄົນ

(See also exercises pp. 51 and 101.)

ka: 3 chao: 5	mi: 3 luk 5	cha: k 3 ko: n 3	mi: 3 sohng 4 ko: n 3
lao 3	mi 3 nohng 5		si 2 ha 4 ko: n 3
chao: 5	mi 3 kohp 5 kua 3		ko: n 3 diaw 1
yu 2 ni 5	mi 3 ko: n 3		sam 4 si: p 3 ko: n 3
ban 5 chao: 5			ha 4 ko: n 3
lao 3			si: p 3 ko: n 3

They have	children	how many?	Have	2 persons.
He has	younger siblings			4 or 5 persons.
You have	family			one person.
Here are	people			35 people.
Your house has				5 people.
He has				10 people.

ເຈົ້າ ໑໑ຢູ່	ຈາຍີ	ສິ່ສິບປີ
໑໑ຢູ່ເຈົ້າ		໑໑ຢູ່ຂອງ ສາມສິບຫ້າປີ
ນອງລາວ ໑໑ຢູ່		ສິບສາມປີ
ທານ		໑໑ຢູ່ຂອງ ຫ້າສິບສິ່ປີ

(See also p.148/2.3)

chao: 5 a' nyu: 2	cha: k 3 bpi 1	si 2 si: p 3 bpi 1
a' nyu: 2 chao: 5		a' nyu: 2 kohy 4 sam 4 si: p 3 ha 4 bpi 1
nohng 5 lao 3 a'		si: p 3 sam 4 bpi 1
tan 2 nyu: 2		a' nyu: 2 kohy 4 ha 4 si: p 3 si 2 bpi 1

Your age	how many years?	40 years old.
Your age		My age 35 years old.
His younger sibling age		30 years old.
Sir's age		My age 54 years old.

ມາ	ຈັກເທື່ອ	ມາສອງເທື່ອ	
ເບິ່ງ		ເບິ່ງເທື່ອດຽວ	
ລາວໄປຂຽວຂວາງ		ໄປສາມສີ່ເທື່ອ	
ເຈົ້າເດີນມາວຽງຈັນ		ເດີນ ມາສອງເທື່ອ	
ma ³	cha:k ³ teua ²	ma ³ sohng ³ teua ²	
beu:ng ²		beu:ng ² teua ² diaw ¹	
lao ³ bpai: ¹ siang ³ kwang ⁴		bpai: ¹ sam ⁴ si ² teua ²	
chao: ⁵ kery ³ ma ³ wiang ³ cha:n ¹		kery ³ ma ³ sohng ⁴ teua ²	
He came		how many times?	He came 2 times.
He looked			He looked once.
He went to Xieng Khouang			He went 3 or 4 times.
You have to come to Vientiane			He has come 2 times.

ລາວ	ມີເຮືອນຈັກຫຼັງ	ໃຫ້ງດຽວ	
ເຈົ້າ		ສອງຫຼັງ	
lao ³	mi ³ heuan ³ cha:k ³ la:ng ⁴	mi ³ la:ng ⁴ diaw ¹	
chao: ⁵		sohng ⁴ la:ng ⁴	
He	has	how many houses?	He has one.
You	(have)		two.

ລາວ	ມີ	ຜົນອ່ງ	ຫຼາຍ ຢູ່ວຽງຈັນ
ເຜົ່າ		ໝູ່	
ອີ່ເຈົ້າ		ເຮືອນ	
		ວຽກ	
lao ³	mi ³	pi ² nohng ⁵	lai ⁴ yu ² wiang ³ cha:n ¹
per:n ²		mu ²	
ka: ³ chao: ⁵		heuan ³	
		wiak ⁵	
He	has	relatives	many in Vientiane.
He		friends	
They (have)		houses	
		work	

ຂອບ ບຣຸຈັກ ຂະເຈົ້າ	ລາວ	ນິອາຍຸຈັກປີ
		ນິລຸກຈັກຄົນ
		ເຮັດຫານຍ່ື່ສ
		ໄປສ
		ມາແຕ່ສ
		ໄປຈັກປີ
		ມາຈັກເທື່ອ

koh ⁴ boh ² hu ⁵ cha:k ³	lao ³	mi ¹ a ¹ nyu: ² cha:k ³ bpi ¹
	ka: ³ chao: ⁵	mi ¹ luk ⁵ cha:k ³ ko:n ³
		he:t ² gan ¹ yu ² sai: ⁴
		bpai: ¹ sai: ⁴
		ma ³ dtae ² sai: ⁴
		bpai: ¹ cha:k ³ bpi ¹
		ma ³ cha:k ³ teua ²

I don't know	he	is how old?
	they	have how many children?
		work where?
		came from where?
		went for how many years?
		came how many times?

Vocabulary Exercise

4-1 ເກີດ

ຂ້ອຍເກີດຢູ່ວຽງຈັນ

ຂະເຈົ້າເກີດຢູ່ຕ່າງປະເທດ

ເຈົ້າເກີດຢູ່ໃສ ອາຍຸຈັກປີ

ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້ ລາວເກີດຢູ່ໃສ

gert⁶

kohy⁶ gert⁶ yu² wiang³ cha:n¹

ka:² chao:⁵ gert⁶ yu² dtang² bpa:³
tet⁵

chao:⁵ gert⁶ yu² sai:⁴ a'nyu:² cha:k³ bpi'¹ Where were you born? How old (are you)?

kohy⁶ boh² hu⁵ lao³ gert⁶ yu² sai:⁴ I don't know where he was born.

To be born

I was born in Vientiane.

They were born abroad.

Where were you born? How old (are you)?

I don't know where he was born.

4-2 ອາຍຸ

ອາຍຸເຈົ້າ ຈັກປີ

ອາຍຸຂ້ອຍ ສິບປີ

ເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກອາຍຸຂອງແມ່ເຈົ້າບໍ່

ລາວບໍ່ຮູ້ ອາຍຸລາວຈັກປີ

a'nyu:²

a'nyu:² chao:⁵ cha:k³ bpi'¹

a'nyu:² kohy⁶ si:p³ bpi'¹

chao:⁵ hu⁵ cha:k³ a'nyu:² kohng⁴
poh² mae² chao:⁵ boh²

lao³ boh² hu⁵ a'nyu:² lao³ cha:k³
bpi'¹

Age

How old are you?

I'm 10 years old.

Do you know your parent's age?

He doesn't know how old he is.

4-3 ນຳກັນ

ລາວກັບຂ້ອຍເຄີຍຮຽນນຳກັນ

ຂະເຈົ້າ ມາມຳກັນ

ຂະເຈົ້າ ບໍ່ຢູ່ນຳກັນ

ມີຄົນຫຼາຍຄົນ ຢູ່ນຳກັນ

na:m³ ga:n¹

lao³ ga:p³ kohy⁶ kery³ hian³ na:m³
ga:n¹

ka:² chao:⁵ ma³ na:m³ ga:n¹

ka:² chao:⁵ boh² yu² na:m³ ga:n¹

mi³ ko:n³ lai⁴ ko:n³ yu² na:m³ ga:n¹

Together

He and I have studied together.

They came together.

They are not living together.

There are many people. They live together.

4-4 ເລື້ອຍໆ (See also p.154/6.3)

ຜົມເວົ້າເລື້ອຍໆ ເລື້ອຍໆ

ລາວ ນາທາຂ້ອຍ ເລື້ອຍໆ

ຂະເຈົ້າ ມາຊື້ຂອງວຽງຈັນເລື້ອຍໆ

ຂະເຈົ້າອັກກັນຫຼາຍ ຢູ່ນຳກັນເລື້ອຍໆ

leuay⁵ leuay⁵

per:n² wao:⁵ leuang² na:n⁵ leuay⁵
leuay⁵

lao³ ma³ ha⁴ kohy⁴ leuay⁵ leuay⁵

ka:⁷ chao:⁵ ma³ seu⁵ kohng⁴ wiang³
cha:n¹ leuay⁵ leuay⁵

ka:⁷ chao:⁵ ha:k³ ga:n¹ lai⁴ yu² na:m³
ga:n¹ leuay⁵ leuay⁵

Always, all the time

He always tells that story.

He always comes to see me.

They always come to shop in
Vientiane.

They like each other a lot, (they)
are always together.

4-5 ດົນໆ

ທ້າວຄຳ ເຮັດການ ຢູ່ກະຊວງ ດົນໆ ໄດ້
ສາມສິບປີແລ້ວ

ຂະເຈົ້າຢູ່ວຽງຈັນ ດົນໆ

ເມັງລາວໄປຕະຫຼາດ ດົນໆ ຊື້ຂອງຫຼາຍ

ຂ້ອຍຮູ້ຈັກລາວ ດົນໆ ຫຼາຍປີແລ້ວ

do:n¹ do:n¹

tao⁵ ka:m² he:t³ gan¹ yu² ga:⁵suang³
do:n¹ do:n¹ dai:⁵ sam⁴ si:p³ bpi'¹
laew⁵

ka:³ chao:⁵ yu² wiang³ cha:n¹ do:n¹
do:n¹

mia:³ lao³ bpai:¹ dta:³ lat⁴ do:n¹
do:n¹ seu⁵ kohng⁴ lai⁴

kohy⁴ hu⁵ cha:k³ lao³ do:n¹ do:n¹ lai⁴
bpi'¹ laew⁵

For a long time

Thao Kham has been working in the
ministry for a long time.
It's been 30 years now.

They have lived in Vientiane for
many years.

His wife went to market for a
long time to do lots of shopping.

I have known him for a long time;
it's been many years.

4-6 ເວົ້າ

ເຈົ້າເວົ້າພາສາລາວໄດ້ບໍ່

ລູກລາວເວົ້າເປັນແລ້ວບໍ່

wao:⁵

chao:⁵ wao:⁵ pa³ sa⁴ lao³ dai:⁵ boh²

luk⁵ lao³ wao:⁵ bpe:n¹ laew⁵ boh²

To speak, tell

Can you speak Lao?

Can his son speak already?

ຂຍເຈົ້າເວົ້າເລື່ອງໝູ່

ka:ʔ chao:ʔ wao:ʔ leuangʔ muʔ

They talk about their friends.

ລາວເວົ້າວ່າ ລາວຊື່ໄປຕ່າງປະເທດ

laoʔ wao:ʔ waʔ laoʔ si:ʔ bpai:ʔ
dtangʔ bpa:ʔ tetʔ

He says that he is going abroad.

ຂຍເຈົ້າເວົ້າວ່າ ບຸຣຸບານເພິ່ນຢູ່ໃສ

ka:ʔ chao:ʔ wao:ʔ waʔ bohʔ huʔ banʔ
per:nʔ yuʔ sai:ʔ

They say that they don't know
where his house is.

4-7 ເຂີຍ (See also p.153/5.2c)

keryʔ

Have ... ed

ເຈົ້າເຂີຍໄປຊຸງງຂວາງຍ໌

chao:ʔ keryʔ bpai:ʔ siangʔ kwangʔ bohʔ

Have you been to Xieng Khouang?

ຂອຍເຂີຍຢູ່ວຽງຈັນ

kohyʔ keryʔ yuʔ wiangʔ cha:nʔ

I used to live in Vientiane.

ລາວເຂີຍຮຽນພາສາລາວເທື່ອນຶ່ງ

laoʔ keryʔ hianʔ paʔ saʔ laoʔ teuaʔ
neu:ngʔ

He once learned Lao before..

ຂອຍຍ໌ເຂີຍເດີນທາງໄປຕ່າງປະເທດ

kohyʔ bohʔ keryʔ dernʔ tangʔ bpai:ʔ
dtangʔ bpa:ʔ tetʔ

I have never travelled abroad.

4-8 ມັກ

ma:kʔ

To like

ເຈົ້າມັກລາວຍ໌

chao:ʔ ma:kʔ laoʔ bohʔ

Do you like Lao?

ລູກມັກພໍ່ແມ່ຫຼາຍ

lukʔ ma:kʔ pohʔ maeʔ laiʔ

Children like (their) father
and mother very much.

ຂຍເຈົ້າມັກເວົ້າດົນນາ

ka:ʔ chao:ʔ ma:kʔ wao:ʔ do:nʔ do:nʔ

They like to talk for a long
time.

ຂອຍມັກໄປຫຼິ້ນຢູ່ຫນ້າ

kohyʔ ma:kʔ bpai:ʔ linʔ yuʔ ha:nʔ

I like to go there to play (for
enjoyment.)

ລາວມັກຊື້ຂອງ ຢູ່ຕະຫລາດ

laoʔ ma:kʔ seuʔ kohngʔ yuʔ dta:ʔ latʔ

She likes to buy things at the
market.

ບົດ ຮຽນ ທີ່ ສີ່

1. ນາງບຸນທອງເປັນໂທລຽງຈັມ
2. ນິພົນອາທິດ ພວກຂ້ອຍ ແຕ່ຜົວລາວ ທ້າວແສງມາແຕ່ຈຸ່ງຂວາງ ເກີດຢູ່ຫີນ.
3. ຢີ່ນີ້ ລາວ ອາຍຸ ສາມສິບປີ
4. ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້ ອາຍຸເມັ້ງລາວ ຈັກປີ.
5. ເມັ້ງທ້າວແສງກັບເມັ້ງ ຂ້ອຍກໍຮັກກັນຫຼາຍ
6. ຂະເຈົ້າ ໄປຕຸລາດນໍາກັນເລື້ອຍໆ
7. ນາງບຸນທອງຊື່ຂອງເກັ່ງ.
8. ນິ້ວນອາທິດ ພວກຂ້ອຍ ໄປຫາຂະເຈົ້າຢູ່ບ້ານ ແລະລິນກັນດີນາ
9. ທ້າວແສງເລີຍໄປຕ່າງ ປະເທດ ສາມສິ່ເທື່ອ
10. ລາວມັກເວົ້າເຮື້ອງການເດີນທາງຂອງລາວ.

1. Nang³ Bu:n¹ Tohng³ bpe:n¹ tai³ wiang³ cha:n¹.
2. Mi³ pi² nohng⁵ lai⁴ yu² ni⁵ dtae² pua⁴ lao³ Tao⁵ Saeng⁴ ma³ dtae² siang³
kuang⁴, gert⁶ yu² ha:n⁶.
3. Bpi¹ ni⁵ lao³ a¹ nyu² sam⁴ si:p³ bpi¹.
4. Kohy⁴ boh² hu⁵ a¹ nyu² mia³ lao³ cha:k³ bpi¹.
5. Mia³ Tao⁵ Saeng⁴ ga:p³ mia³ kohy⁴ goh¹ ha:k² ga:n¹ lai⁴.
6. Ka:³ chao:⁵ bpai:¹ dta:² lat⁴ na:m³ ga:n¹ leuay⁵ leuay⁵.
7. Nang³ Bu:n¹ Tohng³ seu⁵ kohng⁴ geng².
8. Meu⁵ wan³ a¹ ti:t² puak⁵ kohy⁴ bpai:¹ ha⁴ ka:³ chao:⁵ yu² ban⁵ lae:² lo:m³
ga:n¹ do:n¹ do:n¹.
9. Tao⁵ Saeng⁴ kery³ bpai:¹ dtang² pa:³ tet⁵ sam⁴ si² teua².
10. Lao³ ma:k¹ wao:⁵ leuang² gan¹ dern¹ tang³ kohng⁴ lao³.

LESSON 4: THE NEIGHBORS, PART 2

1. Nang Bounthong is a native of Vientiane.
2. She has many relatives here, but her husband Thao Seng comes from Xieng Khouang; he was born there.
3. This year, he is 30 years old.
4. I don't know how old his wife is.
5. Thao Seng's wife and my wife like each other very much.
6. They go to market together often.
7. Nang Bounthong is good at shopping.
8. On Sunday we go to see them at their home and talk a very long time.
9. Thao Seng has been abroad three or four times.
10. He likes to talk about his travels.

LESSON 5: GOING TO MARKET BY PEDICAB

Substitution Exercise

ໂປ່ງໂຕ້າໂຕ້	bpai: ¹ ha:n ⁶ tao: ² dai: ¹	How much to go there?
ທັງໝົດ ສອງຮ້ອຍສິບກີບ	ta:ng ³ mo:t ³ sohng ¹ hohv ⁵ si:p ³ qip ⁶	In all 210 kip.
ໂລເງິນດູ່	lai: ² nger:n ³ du: ²	Count the money please.
ຕອນແລງມາຫາພໍ່ແມ່ດູ່	dton ¹ laeng ³ ma ³ ha ⁴ per:n ² dae ² du: ²	In the evening, please come look for them.
ນັ່ງນັ່ງດູ່	na:ng ² ni ⁵ du: ²	Please sit here.
ໂປ່ງແດ່	bpai: ¹ dae ²	Please go.
ຊື້ໝາກກວຍແດ່	seu ⁵ mak ⁴ guay ⁵ dae ²	Please buy some bananas.
ຊິໄປໃສ	si: ² bpai: ¹ sai: ⁴	Where are you going?
ຂອບໃຈ	kohp ⁶ chai: ¹	Thanks.
ເຊີນ	sern ³	Please.
ເອົາເທົ່າໂຕ້	ao: ¹ tao: ² dai: ¹	How much is it?
ໄປຕລາດເຊົ້າ	bpai ¹ dta: ³ lat ⁴ sao: ³	Go to the morning market.

ຊື່ໄປສ	ຊື່ໄປ	ຕລາດເຊົ້າ
		ວຽງຈັນ
		ຕາງປະເທດ

si: ² bpai: ¹ sai: ⁴	si: ² bpai: ¹ dta: ³ lat ⁶ sao: ⁵
	wiang ³ cha:n ¹
	dtang ⁴ bpa: ³ tet ⁵

Where are you going?	I will go to	the morning market.
		Vientiane.
		abroad.

ໄປຕລາດເຊົ້າ	ເຂົ້າຕາດ	ທຶນສິບກີບ
ໄປວິທຍາລັຍ		ທຶນສິບ
ພາກດ້ວຍຫວິນິ່ງ		ຫວິນິ່ງ ສອງຮອຍກີບ
ພາກທຸງໝວຍນິ່ງ		ໝວຍນິ່ງ ຮອຍທຶນສິບ
ພາກກຽງ ກິໂລ		ກິໂລລະສອງຮອຍ

(See also p.150/4.1)

bpai: ¹ dta: ³ lat ⁶ sao: ⁵	tao: ² dai: ¹	ho:k ¹ si:p ³ gip ⁶
bpai: ¹ wi: ² ta: ² nya ³ lai: ³		ha ⁶ si:p ³
mak ⁶ quay ¹ wi ⁴ neu:ng ²		wi ⁴ neu:ng ² sohng ⁴ hohy ⁵ gip ⁶
mak ⁶ hu:ng ² nuay ² neu:ng ²		nuay ² neu:ng ² hohy ⁵ ha ⁶ si:p ³
mak ⁶ giang ⁵ gi ¹ lo ³		gi ¹ lo ³ la: ² sohng ⁴ hohy ⁵

To go to the morning market	how much?	60 kip.
To go to the high school		50.
Bananas one bunch		One bunch 200 kip.
Papaya one fruit		One fruit 150
Oranges one kilo		Per kilo 200.

(See also p.147/2.2.4b)

ເອົາຫຼັງ	ອາຍ
	ເອ້ຍ
	ມາດາມ

ເອົາ	ໝາກຫຼັງ	ໝວຍນັ້ນ	ເທົ່າໃດ
	ໝາກກວຍ	ຫວີລະ	
	ໝາກຮຽງ	ກິໂລລະ	

ao: ' nya:ng,	ay ⁵
	euay ⁵
	ma ³ dam ¹

ao: ' mak ⁶ hu:ng ² nuay ² na:n ⁵	tao: ² dai: '
	mak ⁶ guay ⁵ wi ⁴ la: ²
	mak ⁶ giang ⁵ gi ¹ lo ³ la: ²

What do you want	older brother?	I'll take	papaya. That-fruit	how much?
	older sister?		bananas. Per bunch	
	Ma'am?		oranges. Per kilo	

ໝວຍນັ້ນຮອຍຫາສິບ			ເອົາຍໍ
ຫວີ	ລະ	ສອງຮອຍ	ເອົາຈັກ ຫວີ
ກິໂລ		ສາມຮອຍ	ກິໂລ

ເອົາ
ເອົາຫວີດຽວ
ເອົາສອງກິໂລ

nuay ² ni ⁵ hohy ⁵ ha ⁶ si:p ³		ao: ' boh ²	ao: '
wi ⁴	la: ² sohng ⁴ hohy ⁵	ao: ' cha:k ³ wi ⁴	ao: ' wi ⁴ diaw ¹
gi ¹ lo ³	sam ⁴ hohy ⁵	gi ¹ lo ³	ao: ' sohng ⁴ gi ¹ lo ³

This fruit 150.		Will you take it?		Yes.
Bunch	per 200.	Do you take how many	bunches?	I'll take one bunch.
Kilo	300.		kilos?	I'll take 2 kilos.

ສອງ	ຄົມ
ສາມ	ຫຼັງ
ສີ່	ຄົມ
ຫ້າ	ໜ່ວຍ
ຫົກ	ຫວີ
ເຈັດ	ກິໂລ
ແປດ	ກຶ້ງ
ເກົ້າ	ກິບ
ສິບ	
ຈຳ	

sohng ³	ko:n ³
sam ⁴	la:ng ⁴
si ²	ka:n ³
ha ⁶	nuay ²
ho:k ³	wi ⁴
che:t ³	gi ¹ lo ³
bpaet ⁶	meu ⁵
gao: ⁵	gip ⁶
si:p ³	
cha:k ³	

2	people
3	buildings
4	machines.
5	fruits
6	bunches
7	kilos
8	days
9	kip
10	
How many	

ຄົມ	ກຶ້ງ
ຫຼັງ	ນີ້
ຄົມ	ນັ້ນ
ໜ່ວຍ	ໄໝ
ຫວີ	

ko:n ³	neu:ng ²
la:ng ⁴	ni ⁵
ka:n ³	na:n ⁵
nuay ²	mai: ²
wi ⁴	

People	one
Building	this
Machines	that
Fruit	new
Bunches	

(See also p.150/4.2)

Vocabulary Exercise

5-1 ຖ້າ

ສາມລ໌ ຖ້າຍັ້ນແດ່
ເຈົ້າຖ້າຂ້ອຍ ຍັ້ນແດ່
ຂ້ອຍຖ້າເຈົ້າ ດົມໆ ແຕ່ເຈົ້າບໍ່ມາ
ຂ້ອຍຖ້າເຈົ້າກໍໄດ

ta⁶

sam⁴ lo⁵ ta⁶ yu² ni⁵ dae²

chao:⁵ ta⁶ kohy⁶ yu² ni⁵ dae²

kohy⁶ ta⁶ chao:⁵ do:n¹ do:n¹ dtae²
chao:⁵ boh² ma³

kohy⁶ ta⁶ chao:⁵ goh¹ dai:⁵

To wait

Samloh, please wait here!

Please wait for me here.

I waited for you for a long time,
but you did not come.

I can wait for you.

5-2 ແຕ່ (ນີ) [ໄປ , ມາ]

ແຕ່ນີ້ໄປມີຈັກກິໂລ
ແຕ່ວຽງຈັນໄປຫມິ່ງຈັກກິໂລ
ແຕ່ຕະລາດມານີ ເຈັດສິບກີບ
ແຕ່ຊຽງຂວາງມາວຽງຈັນ ຂ້ອຍມາມາຮ່ວມເຈົ້າ

dtae² (ni⁵) [bpai:¹ ma³]

dtae² ni⁵ bpai:¹ mi³ cha:k⁴ gi¹ lo³

dtae² wiang³ cha:n¹ bpai:¹ ha:n⁴ mi³
cha:k⁴ gi¹ lo³

dtae² dta:³ lat⁴ ma³ ni⁵ che:t³ si:p³
gip⁶

dtae² siang³ kwang⁴ ma³ wiang³ cha:n¹
kohy⁶ ma³ na:m³ ka:³ chao:⁵

From (here) to ...

How many kilometers from here?

How many kilometers from
Vientiane to there?

From market to here, 70 kip.

From Xieng Khouang to Vientiane
I came with them.

5-3 ເປັນຫຍັງ

ເປັນຫຍັງ ຂະເຈົ້າບໍ່ມາ
ເປັນຫຍັງ ເຈົ້າຢາກໄດ
ເປັນຫຍັງ ລາວເວົ້າວ່າລາວບໍ່ຮູ້

bpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴

bpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴ ka:³ chao:⁵ boh² ma³

bpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴ chao:⁵ yak⁴ dai:⁵

bpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴ lao³ wao:⁵ wa² lao⁵
boh² hu⁵

Why

Why don't they come?

Why do you want it?

Why does he say he doesn't know?

ເປັນທັງ ອ້າຍເຈົ້າໄປນຳ
ເປັນທັງ ລາວບໍ່ຮູ້

bpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴ ay⁵ chao:⁵ boh² bpai:¹ Why doesn't your brother go
na:m³ together (with you)?
bpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴ lao³ boh² hu⁵ Why doesn't he know?

5-4 ແທ
ຫາ ຫາ ແທ
ແພງ ແທ
ມີ ຫາ ຫາ ແທ

tae⁵ Indeed, really!
lai⁴ tae⁵ That's really a lot!
paeng³ tae⁵ It's expensive indeed!
mi³ lai⁴ tae⁵ There are many indeed!

5-5 ແຕ່
ຂ້ອຍມີແຕ່ສາມຮ້ອຍກີບນຶ່ງ
ລາວມີລູກແຕ່ຄົນດຽວ
ມື້ນີ້ມີແຕ່ແນວນີ້
ຂະເຈົ້າ ມາແຕ່ສາມຄົນ

dtae² Only
kohy⁵ mi³ dtae² sam⁴ hohy⁵ gip⁶ neu:ng¹ I have only 300 kip.
lao³ mi³ luk⁵ dtae² ko:n³ diaw¹ He has only one child.
meu⁵ ni⁵ mi³ dtae² naew³ ni⁵ Today there is only this variety
ka:³ chao:⁵ ma³ dtae² sam⁴ ko:n³ (kind).
Just three persons came.

5-6 ຈົ່ງ (See also p.155/7.2)
ລາວຖ້າເຈົ້າ ດົນໆ ຈົ່ງໄປ
ຫາສິບ ລາວບໍ່ໄປ ເຈັດສິບຈົ່ງໄປ
ລາວມາແລ້ວຈົ່ງຈະໄປ
ສາມລ່ວນນຳແພງຈົ່ງບໍ່ເອົາ

cheu:ng² Then, so
lao³ ta⁴ chao:⁵ do:n¹ do:n¹ cheu:ng² He waited for you quite a while
bpai:¹ and then went away.
Ha⁴ si:p⁷ lao³ boh² bpai:¹ che:t⁷ For 50 (kip) he won't go; for
si:p⁷ cheu:ng² bpai:¹ 70 (kip) he will.
lao³ ma³ laew⁵ cheu:ng² cha:³ bpai:¹ If he comes, then he'll go
sam⁴ loh⁵ ka:n³ na:n⁵ paeng³ cheu:ng² (with you)
boh² ao:⁵ That samloh is expensive, so I
won't take it.

5-7 ໂພ (See also p.154/6.2)

ເຮືອນຫຼັງນີ້ແພງ ເອົາຫຼັງໂພ
ລາວໄປແລ້ວ ຂ້ອຍຊື້ເອົາຄົນໂພ
ໜ້ອຍນີ້ບໍດີ ເອົາໜ້ອຍໂພຊະ
ບໍ່ມີແລ້ວຊື້ຊື້ແນວໂພ

mai:²

heuan³ la:ng⁴ ni⁵ paeng³ ao:¹ la:ng⁴
mai:²
lao³ bpai:¹ laew.⁵ kohy⁴ si:² ao:¹
ko:n³ mai:²
nuay² ni⁵ boh² di:¹ ao:¹ nuay² mai:²
sa:²
boh² mi³ laew.⁵ si:² seu⁵ naew² mai:²

Another, New

This house is expensive. We'll
take another house.
He is gone. I'll use another
man.
This is not good. Why don't you
have another.
It's used up. I'll buy a different
kind.

5-8 ເທົາໃດ
ໝາກກວຍຫວິນີເທົາໃດ
ໄປວຽງຈັນເທົາໃດ
ເຈົ້າຊື້ເທົາໃດ
ຂ້ອຍຊື້ສາມກິໂລ

tao:² dai:¹

mak⁴ guay⁵ wi⁴ ni⁵ tao:² dai:¹
bpai:¹ wiang³ cha:n¹ tao:² dai:¹
chao:⁵ seu⁵ tao:² dai:¹
kohy⁴ seu⁵ sam⁴ gi¹ lo³

How much?

How much is this bunch of bananas?
How much is the fare to Vientiane?
How much will you buy?
I'll buy 3 kilograms.

5-9 ຂະນອຍ (See also p.145/2.2.4)

ມີ ຂະນອຍ
ຢູ່ ຂະນອຍ
ມາສອງຄົນ ຂະນອຍ
ມີຄົນມາຫາ ຂະນອຍ

ka:³ nohy⁵

mi³ ka:³ nohy⁵
yu² ka:³ nohy⁵
ma³ sohng⁴ ko:n³ ka:³ nohy⁵
mi³ ko:n³ ma³ ha⁴ ka:³ nohy⁵

Sir, Ma'am

I have some (Here are some), sir
(ma'am).
(He) is here sir.
Two people came, sir.
Someone has come to visit, sir.

5-10 ຫນັງ

ແນ່ນຫນັງ
ເຈົ້າ ຢາກຊື້ຫນັງຢູ່ຕະຫລາດເຊົ້າ

nya:ng⁴

maen² nya:ng⁴
chao:⁵ yak⁴ seu⁵ nya:ng⁴ yu² dta:³
lat⁴ sao:⁵

What?

What is it?
What do you want to buy at the
morning market?

ຂະເຈົ້າເວົ້າຫ້ວງ

ka: 3 chao: 5 wao: 5 nya:ng 4

What did they say?

ລາວເປັນຄົນຫ້ວງ

lao 3 bpe:n 1 ko:n 3 nya:ng 4

Of what nationality is he?

5-11 ລະ

la: 2

Per, for

ຂ້ອຍຊື້ກິໂລລະສີ່ສິບກີບ

kohy 6 seu 5 gi 1 lo 3 la: 2 si 2 si:p 3
gip 6

I'll buy at 40 kip per kilo.

ຂະເຈົ້າເອົາຄົນລະຮ້ອຍກີບ

ka: 3 chao: 5 ao: 1 ko:n 3 la: 2 kohy 5
gip 6

They charge 100 kip per person.

ລາວໄປຕາລາດມື້ລະເທື່ອ

lao 3 bpai: 1 dta: 3 lat 4 meu 5 la: 2 teua 4

She goes to market once a day.

ໝາກກ່ວງໜ່ວຍລະສິບຫ້າກີບ

mak 4 giang 5 nuay 2 la: 2 si:p 3 ha 4
gip 6

Oranges are 15 kip each.

5-12 ຢາກໄດ້

yak 6 (dai: 5)

To want

ເຈົ້າຢາກໄດ້ຫ້ວງ

chao: 5 yak 6 dai: 5 nya:ng 4

What do you want?

ຂ້ອຍຢາກໄດ້ເຮືອນຫຼັງນຶ່ງ

kohy 6 yak 6 dai: 5 heuan 7 la:ng 4 neu:ng 2

I want a house.

ລາວບໍ່ຢາກໄດ້ໝາກກ່ວງບໍ່

lao 3 boh 2 yak 6 dai: 5 mak 4 giang 5 boh 2

Doesn't he want oranges?

ຂ້ອຍຢາກໄດ້ແຕ່ໝາກກ່ວງ

kohy 4 yak 6 dai: 5 dtae 2 mak 4 hu:ng 2

I want only papaya.

5-13 ແຊບ

saep 5

Delicious

ໝາກກ່ວງເຈົ້າຊື້ມື້ແຊບຫຼາຍ

mak 4 giang 5 chao: 5 seu 5 meu 5 ni 5 saep 5
lai 4

The oranges you bought today are very delicious.

ແນວນັ້ນແຊບບໍ່

naew 3 na:n 5 saep 5 boh 2

Is that one delicious?

ດຽວນີ້ໝາກກ່ວງບໍ່ແຊບ

diaw 1 ni 5 mak 4 hu:ng 2 boh 2 saep 5

Now, papaya is not delicious.

5-14 ກຸ້ນ
ນີ້

ນີ້ ເຈົ້າໄປຕາລາດບໍ່

ນີ້ຍັງມີຂອງຫຼາຍ ບໍ່ໄປຊື້ກໍ່ໄດ້

ເປັນຫຍັງ ມີນີ້ໃນໂພກກ່ວງ

ນີ້ ລາວຈິ່ມາຫາຂ້ອຍ

meu⁵ ni⁵

meu⁵ ni⁵ chao:⁵ boh² bpai:¹ dta:¹ lat⁶ boh²

meu⁵ ni² nya:ng³ mi³ kohng⁴ lai⁴ boh² bpai:¹ seu⁵ goh¹ dai:⁵

hpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴ meu⁵ ni⁵ boh² mi³ mak⁶ giang⁵

meu⁵ ni⁵ lao³ si:² ma³ ha⁴ kohy⁶

Today

Don't you go to market today?

We still have things today.
We don't have to go shopping (yet).

Why aren't there any oranges today?

He will come to see me today.

5-15 ຕໍານນ ຕໍານນ

ເຈົ້າມີຕໍານນບໍ່

ນີ້ ຂ້ອຍມີຕໍານນ ຫຼື

ສາມຮອຍບໍ່ແນວແຕ່ ສອງຮອຍຫາສິບກີບ
ຕໍານນ ຫຼື

tao:² na:n⁵ tao:² ni⁵

chao:⁵ mi³ tao:² na:n⁵ boh²

meu⁵ ni⁵ kohy⁶ mi³ tao:² ni⁵ la:³

sam⁴ hohy⁵ boh² paeng³ tae⁵ sohng⁴ hohy⁶ ha⁶ si:p³ gip⁶ tao:² na:n⁵ la:³

Only that, only this.

Is that all you have?

Today I only have this.

300 is not expensive at all.
250 kip is the last (price I can offer).

5-16 ທັງໝົດ

ຂ້ອຍເຈົ້າມາທັງໝົດສິບຫ້າຄົນ

ລາວມີເຮືອນທັງໝົດ ສິບຫຼັງ

ທັງໝົດເທົ່າໃດ

ໂລເງິນທັງໝົດຈັກກີບ

ta:ng³ mo:t³

ka:³ chao:⁵ ma³ ta:ng³ mo:t³ si:p³ ha⁴ ko:n³

lao³ mi³ heuan³ ta:ng³ mo:t³ si:p³ la:ng⁴

ta:ng³ mo:t³ tao:² dai:¹

lai:² nger:n³ ta:ng³ mo:t³ cha:k³ gip⁶

In all

In all 15 persons came.

He has 10 houses in all.

How much are they in all?

Count the money to see how much in all.

ບົດ ຮຽນ ທີ່ ໓໑

1. ສາມລໍ ຖ້າແດ້
2. ສາມລໍ ຊິໄປໃສ
3. ໄປຕລາດເຊົ້າ ແຕ່ນີ້ໄປທັນເທົ່າໃດ
4. ສາມລໍ ຮ້ອຍນຶ່ງ
5. ເປັນຫວັງ ເອົາແຜງແທ້ ຂ້ອຍເລີຍໄປແຕ່ຫກສິບກີບນຶ່ງ
6. ສາມລໍ ແປດສິບຈຶ່ງຈະໄປ
7. ໄປຈະ ຂ້ອຍຊິເອົາຄົນໃໝ່.....
ສາມລໍ ໄປຕລາດເຊົ້າ ເອົາເທົ່າໃດ
8. ສາມລໍ ເຈັດສິບກີບຂ້ານ້ອຍ
9. ຫກສິບກີບ ໄປບໍ່
10. ສາມລໍ ໄປ
11. ແນ່ຄ່າ ເອົາຫວັງ ນາດາມ ເອົາພາກໂນ້ຍ.
12. ພາກກວ້ງກິໂລລະເທົ່າໃດ
13. ແນ່ຄ່າ ກິໂລລະສອງຮ້ອຍ ຢ່າກໄດ້ຈັກກິໂລ
14. ສອງກິໂລ ພາກທ່ຽງພ້ອມນັ້ນ ເທົ່າໃດ
15. ແນ່ຄ່າ ແນວນີ້ແຂບຫຼາຍ ເອົານຳ ນາດາມ ຮ້ອຍທ້າສິບ ຈະ
16. ຂ້ອຍ ຢ່າກໄດ້ພາກກວ່ຍຫວີນຶ່ງ ຫວີຈັກກີບ
17. ແນ່ຄ່າ ຮ້ອຍແປດສິບ
18. ເປັນຫວັງນີ້ ພາກກວ່ຍແຜງແທ້ ຮ້ອຍທ້າສິບເທົ່ານັ້ນທະ
ໂລເງິນທັງໝົດເທົ່າໃດ

BO:T³ HIAN³ TI² HA⁶

1. X: Sam⁴ loh⁵, ta⁴ dae².
2. Sam⁴ loh⁵ #1: Si:² bpai:¹ sai:⁴?
3. X: Bpai:¹ dta:³ lat⁶ sao:⁵ Dtae:² ni⁵ bpai:¹ ha:n⁶ tao:² dai:¹
4. Sam⁴ loh⁵ #1: Hohy⁵ neu:ng².
5. X: Bpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴ ao:¹ paeng³ tae:⁵ Kohy⁶ kery³ bpai:¹ dtae:²
ho:k³ si:p³ gi:p⁶ neu:ng⁴.
6. Sam⁴ loh⁵ #1: Bpaet⁶ si:p³ cheu:ng² cha:³ bpai:¹.
7. X: Bpai:¹ sa:⁴ Kohy⁶ si:² ao:¹ ka:n³ mai:².....
Sam⁴ loh⁵, bpai:¹ dta:³ lat⁶ sao:⁵ ao:¹ tao:² dai:¹?
8. Sam⁴ loh⁵ #2: Che:t³ si:p³ gip⁶ ka⁶ nohy⁵.
9. X: Ho:k³ si:p³ gip⁶ bpai:¹ boh²?
10. Sam⁴ loh⁵ #2: Bpai:¹.
11. Mae:² ka⁵: Ao:¹ nya:ng⁴ ma³ dam¹? Ao:¹ mak⁶ mai:⁵ boh²?
12. X: Mak⁶ giang⁵ gi¹ lo³ la:² tao:² dai:¹?
13. Mae:² ka⁵: Gi¹ lo³ la:² sohng⁴ hohy⁵. Yak⁶ dai:⁵ cha:k³ gi¹ lo³?
14. X: Sohng⁴ gi¹ lo³. Mak⁶ hu:ng² nuay² na:n⁵ tao:² dai:¹?
15. Mae:² ka⁵: Naew³ ni⁵ saep⁵ lai⁴? Ao:¹ na:m³ ma³ dam¹ hohy⁵ ha⁶ si:p³ sa².
16. X: Kohy⁶ yak⁶ dai:⁵ mak⁶ guay⁵ wi⁴ neu:ng² Wi⁴ cha:k³ gip⁶?
17. Mae:² ka⁵: Hohy⁵ bpaet⁶ si:p³.
18. X: Bpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴ meu⁵ ni⁵ mak⁶ guay⁵ paeng³ tae:⁵? Hohy⁵ ha⁶
si:p³ tao:² nan⁵ lae:³ lai:² nger:n³ ta:ng³ mo:t³ tao:²
dai:¹?

LESSON 5: GOING TO MARKET BY PEDICAB
(Note: a Samloh is a 3-wheel pedicab)

1. X: Samloh please wait.
2. 1st Samloh: Where are you going?
3. X: I'm going to the Morning Market. From here to there, how much?
4. 1st Samloh: One hundred.
5. X: Why is your charge so expensive? I used to go for only 60.
6. 1st Samloh: 80 then I'll go.
7. X: Please go. I'll get a new samloh....Samloh to go to the Morning Market, how much?
8. 2nd Samloh: 70 sir.
9. X: 60, will you go?
10. 2nd Samloh: Yes.
11. Woman vendor: What do you want Ma'am? Do you want some fruit?
12. X: Oranges cost how much per kilo?
13. Woman vendor: Per kilo, 200. How many kilos do you want?
14. X: Two kilos. How much is that papaya?
15. Woman vendor: This kind is very delicious. Take it with you Ma'am at 150 please.
16. X: I want one bunch of bananas. A bunch is how many kip?
17. Woman vendor: 180.
18. X: Today, why are bananas so expensive? Only 150. Now add up the bill please, in all, how much?

LESSON 6: BARGAINING AT THE MARKET

Substitution Exercise

ຂອງໃຈຫຼາຍໆ ຂ້ອຍມີເຕົ້າໂບທ້າຮ້ອຍ ຊີລິງໄສ	ບໍ່ເປັນຫວັງດອກ ບໍ່ເປັນຫວັງ ມີເງິນທອນໄທ ລົງຢູ່ຕຸລາດ
kohp ⁴ chai: ¹ lai: ⁴ lai: ⁴ kohy ⁴ mi ³ dtae ² ha ⁴ hohy ⁵ si: ² lo:ng ³ sai: ⁴	boh ² bpe:n ¹ nya:ng ⁴ dohk ⁴ boh ² bpe:n ¹ nya:ng ⁴ mi ³ nger:n ³ tohn ³ hai: ⁴ lo:ng ³ yu ² dta: ³ lat ⁴
Thank you very much I only have a 500 kip note. Where are you going to get off?	You're welcome. Never mind, I have change. I'll get out at the market.

ໄໝວຍ ແກວ ສະບູແກວ	ສິນ ຮາຄາເທົ່າໃດ	ຮາຄາ ຫາສິນນີ້	ສອງຮ້ອຍ ຫາສິນນີ້ ເຈັດສິນນີ້
nuay ² gaew ⁵ sa: ³ bu ¹ naew ³	ni ⁵ la ³ ka ³ tao: ² dai: ¹	la ³ ka ³	si:p ³ gip ⁴ sohng ⁴ hohy ⁵ ha ⁴ si:p ³ gip ⁴ che:t ³ si:p ³ gip ⁴
Fruit	this	the price is how much?	The price (is) 50 kip.
Bottle			250 kip.
Soap piece			70 kip.

ຢາກໄດ້ ຢາກໄດ້ ຢາກຊື້ ເອົາ	ຫວັງອີກແດ່	ໝາກເລັ່ນໝວຍງາມນີ້ ໝາກແຕງຮາຄາຄີເກົ່າບໍ່ ໝາກກວ້ງນີ້ມີໂລເທົ່າໃດ ເອົາໝາກກວຍຫວັງນີ້ ຊຸຂ
yak ⁴ dai: ⁵ yak ⁴ dai: ⁵ yak ⁴ seu ⁵ ao: ¹	nya:ng ⁴ ik ⁴ dae ²	mak ⁴ le:n ² nuay ² ngam ³ mi ³ boh ² mak ⁴ dtaeng ¹ la ³ ka ³ keu ³ gao: ² boh ² mak ⁴ gian ⁵ meu ⁵ ni ⁵ gi: ¹ lo ³ tao: ² dai: ¹ ao: ¹ mak ⁴ guay ⁵ wi ⁴ neu:ng ² sa: ²

Do you want Do you want Will you buy Will you take	something else?	Do you have any good looking tomatoes? Is the price of cucumbers the same as before? Per kilo for this bunch of oranges, how much? Give me one bunch of bananas please.
---	--------------------	--

ກະລຳຍີ	ຫົວ	ເທົ່າໃດ
ໄຜ່ສັດ	ກິໂລ	
ໝາກແຕງ	ໜ່ວຍ	
ໝາກເລັ່ນ	ກິໂລ	
ຜັກບົວ	ມັດ	
ດອກກະລຳຍີ	ຫົວ	
ກະຕ່າ	ໜ່ວຍ	
ສະບູ	ກ່ອນ	
ຢາຄູແຂ້ວ	ຫຼອດ	
ນ້ຳອົບ	ແກວ	
ເຂົ້າແປງໄດ້ກ່ນອຍ	ກັບ	
ໝາກກຸ່ງ	ກິໂລ	
ໝາກຫຸ່ງ	ໜ່ວຍ	
ໝາກກວຍ	ຫວີ	

(See also p.150/4.1)

ga: 3 la:m 3 bpi 1	hua 4	tao: 2 dai 1
pa:k 3 sa: 3 la:t 2	gi 1 lo 3	
mak 6 dtaeng 1	nuay 2	
mak 6 le:n 2	gi 1 lo 3	
pa:k 3 bua 2	ma:t 2	
dohk 6 ga: 3 la:m 3 bpi 1	hua 4	
ga: 3 dta 2	nuay 2	
sa: 3 bu 1	gohn 5	
ya 1 tu 4 kaew 6	loht 6	
na:m 5 o:p 3	gaew 5	
kao: 6 bpaeng 6 de:k 3 nohy 5	ga:p 3	
mak 6 giang 5	gi 1 lo 3	
mak 6 hu:ng 2	nuay 2	
mak 6 guay 5	wi 4	

Cabbage	head	how much?
Lettuce	kilo	
Cucumber	piece	
Tomato	kilo	
Onion	bundle	
Cauliflower	head	
Basket	piece	
Soap	solid	
Toothpaste	tube	
Perfume	bottle	
Baby powder	box	
Oranges	kilo	
Papaya	fruit	
Bananas	bunch	

ຫົວ	ນຶ່ງ	ກີບ
ກິໂລ		
ໜ່ວຍ		
ກິໂລ		
ມັດ		
ຫົວ		
ໜ່ວຍ		
ກ່ອນ		
ຫຼອດ		

hua 4	neu:ng 2	gip 6
gi 1 lo 3		
nuay 2		
gi 1 lo 3		
ma:t 2		
hua 4		
nuay 2		
gohn 5		
loht 6		

Head	one	kip.
Kilo		
Fruit		
Kilo		
Bundle		
Head		
Piece		
Solid		
Tube		

ເຈົ້າ	ຮັບເງິນ	ໂດລາ	ຮັບຢູ່
ຂະເຈົ້າ		ກີບ	
ຂະເຈົ້າ		ໂດລາ ຢູ່ຕະຫຼາດ	ທັນມະຕາຮັບຢູ່

ເງິນຮັບ ເງິນນັ້ນຮັບໄດ້ດອກ

chao:ʃ la:p² nger:n³ do¹ la³ boh² la:p² yu²

ka:³ chao:ʃ gip⁴ boh²

ka:³ chao:ʃ do¹ la³ boh² ta:m³ ma:¹ da¹ la:p² yu²
yu² dta:³ lat⁴

nger:n³ ni⁵ la:p² boh² nger:n³ na:n⁵ la:p² boh² dai:ʃ dohk⁴

You	receive money	can?	Yes.
You (pl.)		kip?	Yes.
You (pl.)		dollars at the market?	Normally they do.
Will you take this money?			We cannot accept that money.

ເຈົ້າ	ໄປ	ທາງວຽງຈັນ	ປີ
ຮີດຂະເຈົ້າ		ທາງຫາດຫຼວງ	
ຮີດເຈົ້າ		ທາງໜອງບອນ	
ອຸ້		ທາງຕະຫຼາດ	

ໄປຢູ່
ໄປຢູ່
ບໍ່ໄປຕອກ

chao:ʃ bpai:¹ tang³ wiang³ cha:n¹ boh²
 lo:t² ka:³ chao:ʃ tang³ tat⁵ luang⁷
 lo:t² chao:ʃ tang³ nohng⁷ bohn¹
 si:² tang³ dta:³ lat⁴

bpai:¹ yu²
 bpai:¹ yu²
 boh² bpai:¹ dohk⁴

You	go	to Vientiane	?	Yes.
Their car		to That Luang		Yes.
Your car		to Nong Bone		No.
Will you		to the market		

គំរ	គេ ទៅ	ប្រយ័ត្ន	ខ្លួនខ្ញុំប្រយ័ត្ន	ប្រយ័ត្ន
	លាវ			ប្រយ័ត្ន
	ខ្លួនគេ ទៅ			ប្រយ័ត្ន

ka:n ³	chao: ⁵	boh ² yu: ² kohy si: ² boh ²	bpai: ¹
	lao ³		bpai: ¹ meu ⁵ ni ⁵
	ka: ³ chao: ⁵		ma ³ meu ⁵ ni ⁵

If	you aren't	in, I won't	go.
	he isn't		go today.
	they aren't		come today.

ខ្លួនខ្ញុំ	ញាតិពាទ	នាំគ្នា	ញាតិពាទ
	ញាតិពាទ		កិល
	ផ្កាប្រដាប់		ប្រដាប់
	នាំគ្នាប្រដាប់		ញាតិពាទ
	ប្រដាប់ ប្រដាប់		ញាតិពាទ

kohy ⁶ seu ⁵	mak ⁶ dtaeng ¹	na:m ³ chao: ⁵	lai ⁴ nuay ²
	mak ⁶ le:n ²		gi ¹ lo ³
	pa:k ³ bua ²		ma:t ²
	na:m ⁵ o:p ³ ik ⁶		lai ⁴ yang ²
	ya ¹ ik ⁶		

I buy	cucumbers	from you	many pieces.
	tomatoes		kilo.
	onions		bundle.
	more perfume		many things.
	more medicine		

ສາມຮອຍ ບໍ່	ໄດ້	ດອກ
	ເອົາ	
	ຈຸ່ງ	
	ມີ	

sam ^h hohy ^f boh ²	dai: ^f	dohk ⁴
	ao: ¹	
	seu ^f	
	mi ³	

300	no	can	!
		take	
		buy	
		have	

ປາກໄດ້	ຫຼັງອີກແດ່
ປາກຊື້	
ປາກເບິ່ງ	

yak ¹ dai: ^f	nya:ng ^h ik ⁴ dae ²
yak ¹ seu ^f	
yak ¹ beu:ng ²	

You want	What else?
You'll buy	
You want to see	

ເອົາ	ໝາກເລັ່ນ	ໄຫ້ແດ່	ນຶ່ງກິໂລ
	ໝາກກຽງ		
	ໝາກສັດ		

ao: ¹	mak ⁴ le:n ²	hai: ^h dae ² neu:ng ² gi ¹ lo ³
	mak ⁴ giang ^f	
	pa:k ³ sa: ³ la:t ²	

Give me	tomatoes	one kilo please.
	oranges	
	lettuce	

ຂ້ອຍ	ຈື່ລືງຢູ່	ຕະລາດເຊົ້າ
		ໃກ້ທາດຫຼວງ
		ໜອງບຸນ

kohy ⁴ si: ² lo:ng ³ yu ²	dta: ³ tat ⁴ sao: ^f
	gai: ^f tat ^f luang ⁴
	nohng ^h bohn ¹

I will get off at	the morning market.
	near That Luang.
	Nong Bone.

Vocabulary Exercise

6-1 ຕົ້ນ

ຄົນບໍ່ມີລົດ ຂະເຈົ້າໄປບໍ່ໄດ້ດອກ

ຄົນບໍ່ມີໝາກກວ້ງກໍຊື້ໝາກຫຼົງ ຊະ

ຄົນເຈົ້າບໍ່ມີເງິນເກີບ ກໍບໍ່ເປັນຫວັງ ຂະເຈົ້າຮັບໂດລາ

ຂ້ອຍຈະຫຼຸດລາຄາ ຄົນເຈົ້າຊື້ນຳຂ້ອຍເລື້ອຍໆ

ລາວຢາກໄປ ຄົນຂ້ອຍໄປ

ຂະເຈົ້າເອົາລົດແທກຊີໄປ ຄົນສາມລ້ແພງຫຼາຍ

ເອົາແນວນີ້ກໍໄດ້ ຄົນເຈົ້າບໍ່ມີແນວນັ້ນ

ມື້ນີ້ບໍ່ໄປກໍໄດ້ ຄົນເຈົ້າບໍ່ຢາກໄດ້

ka:n³

ka:n³ boh² mi³ lo:t² ka:³ chao:⁵
bpai:¹ boh² dai:⁵ dohk⁶

ka:n³ boh² mi³ mak⁴ giang,⁵ goh¹
seu⁵ mak⁴ hu:ng² sa:²

ka:n³ chao:⁵ boh² mi³ nger:n³ gip,⁶
goh¹ boh² bpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴ ka:³

chao:⁵ ha:p² do¹ la³
kohy⁴ cha:³ lu:t³ la³ ka:³ ka:n³ chao:⁵

seu⁵ na:m³ kohy⁴ leuay⁵ leuay⁵
lao³ yak⁴ bpai:¹ ka:n³ kohy⁴ bpai:¹

ka:³ chao:⁵ ao:¹ lo:t² taek⁵ si³
bpai:¹ ka:n³ sam⁴ loh⁵ paeng³ lai⁴

ao:¹ naew³ ni⁵ goh¹ dai:⁵ ka:n³ chao:⁵
boh² mi³

meu⁵ ni⁵ boh² bpai:¹ goh¹ dai:⁵ ka:n³
chao:⁵ boh² yak⁴ dai:⁵

If, when

If they don't have a car,
they can't go.

If you don't have oranges,
I'll buy papaya.

If you don't have kip, it's
all right, they take
dollars.

I'll lower the price, if
you always buy from me.
He wants to go when I go.

They'll go by taxi if samloh
is very expensive.

I can take these, if you
don't have those.

I don't mind not going today,
if you don't want to.

6-2 ຫຼຸດ

ຂະເຈົ້າຫຼຸດສາມຮອຍກີບ

ລາວຫຼຸດລາຄາ ໜ້ອຍລະ ສິບຫ້າກີບ

ຫຼຸດໄທແດ່ ຫ້າສິບກີບ

ຫຼຸດບໍ່ໄດ້ ຂ້ອຍຂາດທຶນ

ລາວບໍ່ເຄີຍຫຼຸດໄທ

lu:t³

ka:³ chao:⁵ lu:t³ sam⁴ hohy⁵ gip⁴

lao³ lu:t³ la³ ka³ nuay³ la:² si:p³
ha⁴ gip⁴

lu:t³ hai:⁴ dae² ha⁴ si:p³ gip⁴

lu:t³ boh² dai:⁵ kohy⁴ kat⁴ teu:n²

lao³ boh² kery³ lu:t³ hai:⁴

To lower (prices), discount

They lower the price by 300
kip.

He discounts 15 kip each.

Give me a discount and make
it 50 kip.

I can't lower the price;
I'll lose money.

He never gives a discount
to people.

6-3 ຮາກາ

ຮາກາແຜງຫຼາຍ
ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້ຈັກຮາກາເທົ່າໃດ
ຮາກາຍຄືເກົ່າ ດຽວນີ້
ນີ້ ຮາກາຄືເກົ່າ ສາມຮອຍກີບ

la¹ ka¹

la² ka¹ paeng¹ lai⁴

kohy⁴ boh² hu⁵ cha:k² la¹ ka¹ tao:¹
dai:¹

la¹ ka¹ boh³ keu³ gao:² diaw¹ ni⁵
ni⁵ la² ka¹ keu³ gao:² sam⁴ hohy⁵
gip⁴

Price

The price is very high.

I don't know how much the price is.

Now the price is the same as before.

This is the same price as before.
300 kip.

6-4 ແບບ

ແບບນັ້ນແນ່ນແບບລາວ
ລາວ ໄປແບບນັ້ນເລື້ອຍໆ
ເວົ້າແບບນັ້ນດີ
ນີ້ກະຕາແບບນັ້ນ

baep⁴

baep⁴ na:n⁵ boh² maen² baep⁴ lao³

lao³ bpe:n¹ baep⁴ na:n⁵ leuay⁵ leuay⁵

wao:⁵ baep⁴ ni⁵ boh² di¹

mi³ ga:¹ dta¹ baep⁴ ni⁵ boh²

The way (of doing things), manner

That is not the way Lao people do it.

He is always like that.

(You) can't talk like that.

Do you have this kind of basket?

6-5 ງາມ

ແບບນີ້ງາມຫຼາຍ
ນອງຂ້ອຍງາມ
ໝາກທຸ່ງໜ້ອຍນີ້ງາມ
ເຮືອນຂອງລາວງາມຫຼາຍ
ວັດທາດຫຼວງງາມ

ngam³

baep⁴ ni⁵ ngam³ lai⁴

nohng⁵ kohy⁴ ngam³

mak⁴ hu:ng² nuay² ni⁵ ngam³

heuan³ kohng⁴ lao³ ngam³ lai⁴

wa:t² tat⁵ luang⁴ ngam³

Beautiful, pretty

This style is very beautiful

My younger sister is pretty.

This papaya is beautiful.

His house is very beautiful.

Wat That Luang is beautiful.

6-6 ພັ້ມ

ກະຕ່າແບບພັ້ມ ຮາຄາບແພງ

ຮີດຄັ້ມນີ້ງາມ ແລະພັ້ມດີ

ຂ້ອຍນັກແບບນີ້ ພັ້ມຫຼາຍ

ma:n^h

ga:³ dta:³ baep^h ni^f ma:n^h la³ ka³
boh² paeng³

lo:t³ ka:n³ ni^f ngam³ lae:³ ma:n^h
di¹

kohy^h ma:k² baep^h ni^f ma:n^h lai^h

Strong (for things)

These baskets are strong. The price is not expensive.

This car is beautiful and powerful.

I like this style, it is very strong.

(Negative emphatic particle)

6-7 ດອກ

ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ເຄີຍມາດອກ

ຮາຄາບແພງດອກ

ຂ້ອຍຢາກພາສາລາວບໍ່ເປັນດອກ

ແບບນັ້ນບໍ່ງາມດອກ

dohk^h

kohy^h boh² kery³ ma³ dohk^h

la³ ka³ boh² paeng³ dohk^h

kohy^h bpak^h pa³ sa^h lao³ boh² bpe:n¹
dohk^h

baep^h na:n⁵ boh² ngam³ dohk^h

I have never been here before.

The price is not high at all.

I can't speak Lao!

That is not beautiful at all.

6-8 ຂາດທຶນ

ລາວຂາດທຶນຫຼາຍ

ແບບນີ້ຂາດທຶນ

ແມ່ຄ້າຍຢາກຂາດທຶນ

kat^h teu:n²

lao³ kat^h teu:n² lai^h

baep^h ni^f boh² kat^h teu:n²

mae² ka⁵ boh² yak^h kat^h teu:n²

To lose money (in business)

He lost a lot of money.

If you do it this way, you won't lose money.

Women vendors don't want to lose money.

6-9 ອີກ

ມາຫາຂ້ອຍອີກ

ມາຫຼິ້ນອີກ

ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຢາກໄປອີກ

ລາວຍັງຈະໄປອີກເທື່ອນຶ່ງ

ບໍ່ມີອີກແລ້ວ

ik⁶

ma³ ha⁴ kohy⁶ ik⁶

ma³ lin⁶ ik⁶

kohy⁶ boh³ yak⁶ bpai:¹ ik⁶

lao³ nyang³ si:² bpai:¹ ik⁶ teua²
neu:ng²

boh² mi³ ik⁶ laew⁵

Again, more

Come to see me again.

Come to visit again.

I don't want to go again.

He will go once again.

There is nothing left.

6-10

ຢ່າງ

ຂ້ອຍຊື້ຫຼາຍຢ່າງຢູ່ຕະຫຼາດ

ມີຫຼາຍຢ່າງເຊັ່ນຈະມັກ

ຂະເຈັ້ງມີຫຼາຍຢ່າງ

ດຽວນີ້ມີແຕ່ສາມຢ່າງເທົ່ານັ້ນ

yang³

kohy⁶ seu⁵ lai⁴ yang² yu² dta:³
lat⁶

mi³ lai⁴ yang³ chao:⁵ cha:³ ma:k²

ka:³ chao:⁵ mi³ lai⁴ yang²

diaw¹ ni⁵ mi³ dtae² sam⁴ yang² tao:⁵
na:n⁵

Kind, sort

I buy many kinds of things at the market.

There are many things you would like to (have, buy, do etc.)

They have many things.

Now we have only three kinds.

6-11

ຢູ່

ມີຢູ່

ຂ້ອຍຢາກເບິ່ງຢູ່

ຢາກໄດ້ຫຼາຍຢູ່

yu²

mi³ yu²

kohy⁶ yak⁶ beu:ng² yu²

yak⁶ dai:⁵ lai⁴ yu²

(Reinforcing particle)

I really have. (There really is.)

I really want to see.

I do want many.

ງາມ ບູ້ ແຕ່ ແວງ ຫຼາຍ

ດີ ບູ້ ແຕ່ ບໍ່ ມີ ຫຼາຍ

6-12

ຄື

ລູກ ເຈົ້າ ຄື ເຈົ້າ ຫຼາຍ

ຂອງ ເຈົ້າ ບໍ່ ຄື ຂອງ ງູ່ ຂອງ

ຄື ຫຼາຍ ແຕ່ ບໍ່ ແນ່ນ ແບບ ດຽວ

ລາວ ບໍ່ ຄື ອາຍ ລາວ ບໍ່ ຢາກ ຮຽນ ທັງ ສີ

ເພິ່ນ ຢາກ ພາ ສາ ລາວ ຄື ຄົນ ລາວ ຫຼາຍ

ngam³ yu² dtae² paeng³ lai⁴

di¹ yu² dtae² boh² mi² lai⁴

keu³

luk⁵ chao:⁵ keu³ chao:⁵ lai⁴

kohng⁴ chao:⁵ boh² keu³ kohng⁴ kohy⁴ Yours is not like mine.

keu² lai⁴ dtae² boh² maen² baep⁶
diaw¹

lao³ boh² keu³ ay⁵ lao³ boh² yak⁶
hian³ na:ng⁴ seu⁴

per:n² bpak⁶ pa³ sa⁴ lao³ keu³ ko:n³ He speaks Lao just like a Lao.
lao³ lai⁴

Yes, it is beautiful, but very expensive.

Yes, it is good, but there are not many.

(A) like, similar, to resemble

Your child is just like you.

Yours is not like mine.

It is very similar, but it is not the same kind.

He is not like his elder brother.
He doesn't like learning.

He speaks Lao just like a Lao.

6-13

ເອົາ ໃຫ້ (See also p.153/5.3)

ເອົາ ໃຫ້ ຂອງ ແດ່

ຂອງ ເອົາ ໃຫ້ ເຈົ້າ

ເອົາ ພາກ ກວ່າ ບາໂທແດ່ ທີ່ ວິນັງ

ເອົາ ກະລໍ່າ ປີ້ ໃຫ້ ແດ່ ກິໂລ ມື່ງ

ຂ້ອຍ ບໍ່ ເອົາ ໃຫ້ ລາວ ແຕ່ ເອົາ ໃຫ້ ເຈົ້າ

ao:¹ hai:⁶

ao:¹ hai:⁶ kohy⁴ dae²

kohy⁴ ao:¹ hai:⁶ chao:⁵

ao:¹ mak⁶ guay⁵ hai:⁶ dae² wi⁴
neu:ng²

ao:¹ ga:³ la:m³ bpi¹ hai⁶ dae² gi¹
lo³ neu:ng²

kohy⁴ boh² ao:¹ hai:⁶ lao³ dtae²
ao:¹ hai:⁶ chao:⁵

To give (something) to

Give it to me, please.

I give it to you.

Give (me) a bunch of bananas.

Give (me) one kilo of cabbage.

I won't give it to him, but to you.

6-14 ຢາ

ນີ້ຢາຫຼາຍຢ່າງ

ນີ້ຢາຫຼັງ

ຢາແນວນີ້ດີ

ຢານີ້ແຊບແລະດີຫຼາຍ

ya'

mi³ ya' lai⁴ yang²

ni⁵ ya' nya:ng⁴

ya' naew³ ni⁵ di'

ya' ni⁵ saep⁵ lae:² di' lai⁴

Medicine

There are many kinds of medicine.

What kind of medicine is this?

This medicine is good.

This medicine is tasty and very effective.

6-15 ນ້ຳ

ນີ້ນ້ຳຫຼາຍ

ໄປຊື້ນ້ຳແດ່

ນ້ຳນີ້ແຊບຫຼາຍ

ພວກຂ້ອຍຊື້ນ້ຳນີ້ຈຳລາວເລື້ອຍ ຯ

na:m⁵

mi³ na:m⁵ lai⁴

bpai:¹ seu⁵ na:m⁵ dae²

na:m⁵ ni⁵ saep⁵ lai⁴

puak⁵ kohy⁴ seu⁵ na:m⁵ na:m⁵ lao³
leuay⁵ leuay⁵

Water

There is a lot of water.

Go and buy water!

This water is tasty.

We buy water from him very often.

6-16 ຮັບ

ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປຮັບເຈົ້າ

ນີ້ຫຼາຍຄົນມາຮັບພໍ່

ຂະເຈົ້າບໍ່ຮັບໂດລາ ແຕ່ເງິນກີບ

ha:p⁷

kohy⁴ si:² bpai:¹ ha:p² chao:⁵

mi³ lai⁴ ko:n³ ma³ ha:p³ per:n²

ka:³ chao:⁵ boh² ha:p² do' la³
dtae² nger:n² gip⁴

To meet, take

I'll go to meet you.

Many people came to meet him.

They don't take dollars but (they do take) kip.

6-17 ບໍ່ເປັນຫວັງ
 ບໍ່ເປັນຫວັງ ຂ້ອຍຊື້ຊີ້ໃຫ້ເຈົ້າ
 ບໍ່ເປັນຫວັງຍັງມີຫຼາຍ
 ເຈົ້າບໍ່ຢາກໄດ້ບໍ່ ບໍ່ເປັນຫວັງ
 ບໍ່ເອົາບໍ່ ບໍ່ເປັນຫວັງ
 ບໍ່ມີເງິນ ບໍ່ເປັນຫວັງ

boh² bpe:n¹ nya:ng^u
 boh² bpe:n¹ nya:ng^u koh⁴ si:²
 seu⁵ hai:⁶ chao:⁵
 boh² bpe:n¹ nya:ng^u mi³ lai^u
 chao:⁵ boh² yak⁴ dai:⁵ boh² boh²
 bpe:n¹ nya:ng^u
 boh² ao:¹ boh² boh² bpe:n¹ nya:ng^u
 boh² mi³ nger:n.⁷ boh² bpe:n¹ nya:ng^u

That is all right, Don't worry,
I don't mind, No sweat.
 That's all right, I'll buy you one.
 Don't worry, there are still many.
 You don't want it? That's all
 right with me.
 You don't want it? I don't mind.
 You don't have any money. Don't
 worry.

6-18 ທອນ
 ເຈົ້າມີເງິນທອນບໍ່
 ລາວທອນໃຫ້ຂ້ອຍ ຫ້າສິບ
 ຂະເຈົ້າບໍ່ທອນໃຫ້ ເອົາມົດແລ້ວ

tohn³
 chao:⁵ mi² nger:n.³ tohn³ boh²
 lao³ tohn³ hai:⁴ koh⁴ ha⁴ si:p³
 ka:³ chao:⁵ boh² tohn³ hai:⁵ ao:¹
 mo:t³ laew⁵

To change money
 Do you have change?
 He gave me 5 kip change.
 They did not give (me) change.
 They took all (the money).

6-19 ໃຫຍ່
 ກະຕ່າພ່ວຍໃຫຍ່ຜົນນັ່ງກິບ
 ລາວມີເຮືອນຫຼັງໃຫຍ່ຫຼັງນັ່ງ
 ວັດນັ່ງງານແລະໃຫຍ່
 ນ້ຳອົບແກ້ວໃຫຍ່ເທົ່າໃດ

nyai:²
 ga:³ dta² nuay¹ nyai:² pa:n³ neu:ng⁶
 gip⁶
 lao³ mi³ heuan³ la:ng^u nyai:² la:ng^u
 neu:ng¹
 wa:t² ni⁵ ngam³ lae:² nyai:²
 na:m⁵ o:p³ gaew⁵ nyai:² tao:² dai:¹

Big, large
 A big basket costs 1,000 kip.
 He has big house.
 This temple is beautiful and
 large.
 How much is a big bottle of
 perfume?

ຫົວ ຮຽນ ທີ່ ຫົກ

- 1. X ກະລຳປີນີ້ ຫົວເທົ່າໃດ
- 2. ແນ່ຄຳ ກິໂລນຶ່ງສາມສິບຫ້າກີບ ຄັນເຈົ້າຊີເອົາຫຼາຍ ຂ້ອຍຈະຫຼຸດໄຫ້ ຫ້າກີບ .
- 3. X ເອົາສາມກິໂລ ແລະຜັກສລັດກິໂລນຶ່ງ ໝາກແຕງຫ່ວຍນຶ່ງ ໝາກເລ່ນສອງກິໂລ ຜັກບົວສອງນັດ ແລະດອກກະລຳປີສອງຫົວ.
- 4. X ກະດຳຫ່ວຍນີ້ ຮາຄາເທົ່າໃດ
- 5. ແນ່ຄຳ ແບບນຶ່ງງາມ ແລະກັ່ນຫຼາຍ ເອົານຳມາຕາມແຕ່ສີ່ຮ້ອຍກີບ .
- 6. X ເປັນຫຼັງຈຶ່ງແຜງແທ້ ສາມຮ້ອຍຊະ
- 7. ແນ່ຄຳ ສາມຮ້ອຍບໍ່ໄດ້ດອກ ຂາດຫິນ ຄັນມາດານຊີເອົາ ສາມຮ້ອຍເຈັດສິບ
- 8. X ສາມຮ້ອຍຫ້າສິບຊະ ຂ້ອຍຍັງຈະຊື້ນຳເຈົ້າອີກຫຼາຍຢ່າງຢູ່.
- 9. ແນ່ຄຳ ມາດານຢາກໄດ້ຫຼັງອີກແດ່
- 10. X ສະບູອາບນ້ຳ ຮາຄາຄືເກົ່າບໍ່ ເອົາໄຫ້ແດ່ທັກກ່ອນ ຢ່າຄູ່ແຂ້ວຫຼອດໄຫຼ່ຫຼອດນຶ່ງນຳອີບແບບນີ້ແກ່ວນຶ່ງ ເຂົ້າແປງ ເດັກນ້ອຍກັບນຶ່ງເທົ່ານັ້ນຫຼະ ທັງໝົດເທົ່າໃດ
- 11. ແນ່ຄຳ ທັງໝົດ ພັນເກົ່າຮ້ອຍກີບ
- 12. X ເຈົ້າຮັບເງິນໂດລາບໍ່ ຢູ່ນີ້
- 13. ແນ່ຄຳ ຮັບຢູ່
- 14. X ຂ້ອຍມີແຕ່ໂບທ້າໂດລາ
- 15. ແນ່ຄຳ ບໍ່ເປັນຫຼັງ ຂ້ອຍກໍ່ທອນໄຫ້ເຈົ້າທັກຮ້ອຍ ຂອບໃຈຫຼາຍໆ
- 16. ຣົດໂດຍສານ (ແທັກຊີ) ມາດານຊີລົງໃສ
- 17. X ເຈົ້າໄປທາງທາດຫຼວງບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍຊີລົງຢູ່ວັດທອງບອນ
- 18. ຣົດໂດຍສານ ໄປ

1. X: Ga:³ la:m³ bpi'¹ ni⁵ hua⁴ tao:² dai:¹?
2. Mae² ka⁵: Gi'¹ lo³ neu:ng⁴ sam⁵ si:p³ ha⁶ gip⁶ Ka:n³ chao:⁵ si:² ao:¹ lai⁴, kohy⁶ cha:³ lu:t³ hai:⁶ ha⁶ gip⁶.
3. X: Ao:¹ sam⁴ gi'¹ lo³, lae:² pa:k³ sa² la:t² gi'¹ lo³ neu:ng² mak⁶ dtaeng¹ nuay² neu:ng² mak⁶ le:n² sohng⁴ gi'¹ lo³ pa:k³ bua² sohng⁴ ma:t² lae:² dohk⁶ ga:³ la:m³ bpi'¹ sohng⁴ hua⁴.
4. X: Ga:³ dta² nuay² ni⁵ la³ ka³ tao:² dai:¹.
5. Mae² ka⁵: Baep⁶ ni⁵ ngam³ lae:² goh¹ ma:n⁴ lai⁴. Ao:¹ na:m³ ma³ dam¹ dtae² si² hohy⁵ gip⁶.
6. X: Bpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴ cheu:ng² paeng³ tae⁵. Sam⁴ hohy⁵ sa².
7. Mae² ka⁵: Sam⁴ hohy⁵ boh² dai:⁵ dohk⁶, Kat⁶ teu:n³. Ka:n³ ma³ dam¹ si:² ao:¹ sam⁴ hohy⁵ che:t³ si:p³.
8. X: Sam⁴ hohy⁵ ha⁶ si:p³ sa². Kohy⁶ nya:ng³ cha:³ seu⁵ na:m³ chao:⁵ ik⁶ lai⁴ yang¹ yu².
9. Mae² ka⁵: Ma³ dam¹ yak⁴ dai:⁵ nya:ng⁴ ik⁶ dae².
10. X: Sa³ bu¹ ap⁴ na:m⁵ la³ ka³ keu³ kao:² boh²? Ao:¹ hai:⁶ dae² hok³ gohn² Ya¹ tu⁴ kaew⁶ loht⁶ nyai:² loht⁶ neu:ng². Na:m⁵ o:p³ bpaep⁶ ni⁵ gaew⁵ neu:ng². Kao:¹ bpaeng⁵ de:k³ nohy⁵ ga:p³ neu:ng² tao:² nan⁵ la:³. Ta:ng³ mo:t³ tao:² dai:¹?
11. Mae² ka⁵: Ta:ng³ mo:t³ pa:n³ kao:⁵ hohy⁵ gip⁶.
12. X: Chao:⁵ la:p² nger:n³ do¹ la³ boh² yu² ni⁵?
13. Mae² ka⁵: La:p² yu².
14. X: Kohy⁶ mi³ dtae² bai:¹ ha⁶ do¹ la³.
15. Mae² ka⁵: Boh² bpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴. Kohy⁶ goh¹ tohn³ hai⁶ chao:⁵ ho:k³ hohy⁵ Kohp⁶ chai:¹ lai⁴ la:⁴.
16. Lo:t³ doy¹ san⁴ (tae:k² si³) : Ma³ dam¹ si:² lo:ng³ sai:⁴?
17. X: Chao:⁵ bpai:¹ tang³ tat⁵ luang⁴ boh²? kohy⁶ si:² lo:ng³ yu² wa:t² nohng⁴ bohn¹.
18. Lo:t³ doy¹ san³ : Bpai:¹.

LESSON 6: BARGAINING AT THE MARKET

1. X: How much is one head of cabbage?
2. Woman vendor: 35 kip for one kilo. If you buy a lot, I'll lower (the price) 5 kip.
3. X: I want 3 kilos of cabbages and 1 kilo of lettuce, a cucumber, 2 kilos of tomatoes, 2 bunches of onions and 2 heads of cauliflower.
4. X: How much is the price of this basket?
5. Woman vendor: These (baskets) are pretty and very solid too. Madam can take it for only 400.
6. X: How come so expensive? Make it 300.
7. Woman vendor: 300 is impossible. I lose money, if Ma'am will buy, (I sell) at 370.
8. X: Make it 350; I'll still buy many more things from you.
9. Woman vendor: What else does Ma'am want?
10. X: Bath soap prices are the same as before, aren't they? Give me six pieces (of bath soap), one big tube of tooth paste, one bottle of this (kind of) perfume, one box of baby powder and that is all. How much in all?
11. Woman vendor: In total 1,900 kip.
12. X: Do you accept dollars here?
13. Woman vendor: Yes, we do.
14. X: I only have a 5 dollar-note.
15. Woman vendor: Never mind, I'll give you 600 kip change. Thank you.
16. Taxi: Where will you be getting off, Ma'am?
17. X: Will you go to That Luang Street? I'll get off at Wat Nong Bone.
18. Taxi: (Okay) Let's go.

LESSON 7: RENTING A HOUSE

Substitution Exercise

ເຈົ້າ	ນາຍູ່ເມືອງລາວໄດ້ຈັດຢື		ຢືປາຍ
ລາວ		ສອງ	
ຂະເຈົ້າ		ສາມ	
chao: 5	ma 3 yu 2 meuang 3 lao 3 dai: 5 cha: k 3 bpi 1		bpi 1 bpai 1
lao 3			sohng 4
ka: 3 chao: 5			sam 4
You	came to live in Laos, how years ago?	1	years ago.
He		2	
They		3	

ເຈົ້າ	ເຊົ່າເຮືອນຢູ່ໃສ	ຂອຍ	ເຊົ່າເຮືອນ	ຢູ່	ທາດຫຼວງ
ລາວ		ລາວ			ບ້ານໜອງບອນ
ຂະເຈົ້າ			ເຊົ່າເຮືອນຂອງທ່ານແສງ		ທາດຫຼວງ
chao: 5	sao: 2 heuan 3 yu 2 sai: 4	kohy 4	sao: 2 heuan 3	yu 2	tat 5 luang 4
lao 3		lao 3			ban 5 nohng 4 bohn 1
ka: 3 chao: 5			sao: 2 heuan 3 kohng 4 tao 5 saeng 4 yu 2		tat 5 luang 6

You	rent a house, where?	I	rent a house at	That Luang.
He		He		Ban Nong Bone.
They			rent a house from Mr. Seng at	That Luang.

ເຮືອນເຈົ້ານີ້	ຈັກຫ້ອງ	ນີ້ຫ້ອງສີ່ຫ້ອງ
ຫຼັງນີ້ນີ້ຫ້ອງນອນ		ນີ້ສອງຫ້ອງ
heuan 3 chao: 5 mi 3 hohng 4	cha: k 3 hohng 6	mi 3 hohng 4 si 2 hohng 6
la: ng 4 ni 5 mi 3 hohng 6 nohn 3		mi 3 sohng 4 hohng 6
Your house has rooms,	how many?	It has 4 rooms.
This building has bedrooms,		It has 2 rooms.

ເຮືອນຂອຍມີ	ສອງຊັ້ນ
	ຊັ້ນດຽວ
	ສາມຊັ້ນ
	ສີ່ຊັ້ນ

heuan ³ kohy ⁶ mi ³	sohng ⁴ sa:n ⁵
	sa:n ⁵ diaw ¹
	sam ⁴ sa:n ⁵
	si ² sa:n ⁵
House I have	2 storeys.
	1 storey.
	3 storeys.
	4 storeys.

ຊັ້ນເທິງມີຫ້ອງນອນ	ຫ້ອງດຽວ
	ສອງຫ້ອງ
	ສາມຫ້ອງ
	ສີ່ຫ້ອງ

sa:n ⁵ ter:ng ³ mi ³ hohng ⁶ nohn ³	hohng ⁶ diaw ¹
	sohng ⁴ hohng ⁶
	sam ⁴ hohng ⁶
	si ² hohng ⁶

Upstairs is bedroom	1 room.
	2 rooms.
	3 rooms.
	4 rooms.

ຢູ່	ທາງໜ້າ	ບ້ານ	ມີ	ບ່ອນຈອດລົດ
	ຂ້າງຫຼັງ	ເຮືອນ		
	ກ່ອນ			
	ອ້ອມ			

yu ²	tang ³ na ⁶	ban ⁵	mi ³ bohn ² chcht ⁶ lo:t ²
	kang ⁶ la:ng ⁴	heuan ³	
	gohng ⁷		
	ohm ⁷		

In	front of	the home	is a parking place.
	behind	the house	
	under		
	around		

Vocabulary Exercise

7-1 ເຊົ່າ

ຂ້ອຍຢາກເຊົ່າເຮືອນແບບລາວ

ເຊົ່າຮີດຄົມນຶ່ງເທົ່າໃດ

ລາວບໍ່ເຊົ່າເຮືອນ ເຊົ່າຫ້ອງ ຫ້ອງງື່

ຂະເຈົ້າຢາກເຊົ່າແຕ່ຊັ້ນເທິງ

sao:²

kohy⁶ yak⁶ sao:² heuan³ baep⁶
lao³

sao:² lo:t² ka:n³ neu:ng² tao:²
dai:¹

lao³ boh² sao:² heuan³ sao:² hohng⁶

ka:³ chao:⁵ yak⁶ 'sao:² dtae² sa:n⁵
ter:ng²

To rent

I want to rent a Lao style house.

How much do you pay to rent a car?

He does not rent a house. He rents a room.

They want to rent only the upstairs.

7-2 ໃນ

ພໍ່ຢູ່ໃນບ້ານ

ລາວເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ໃນຫ້ອງ

ຢູ່ໃນວຽງຈັນມີຕະຫຼາດຈັກບ່ອນ

nai:³

poh³ yu¹ nai:³ ban⁵

lao³ he:t³ wiak⁵ yu¹ nai:³ hohng⁶

yu² nai:³ wiang³ cha:n¹ mi³ dtai:³
lat⁶ cha:k³ bohn²

In

Father is in the house.

He works in the room.

How many markets are there in Vientiane?

7-3 ຄື

ມີຫຼາຍແນວຄືໝາກກວຍ, ໝາກກ້ວງ, ໝາກຕູ່ງ .

ມີຫຼາຍຄົນມາຄືທ້າວເສງກັບເມັງລາວ ທ່ານບຸນທອງ
ທ່ານມິນລາ .

ເນື່ອງລາວມີເມັງໃຫຍ່ຄື ວຽງຈັນ.

ຢູ່ຕະຫຼາດມີຫຼາຍຢ່າງຄື ໝາກເລັ່ນ ກະລຳຍີ ຜັກບວມ

keu³

mi² lai⁴ naew³ keu³ mak⁶ guay⁵ mak⁶
giang⁵ mak⁶ hu:ng²

mi² lai⁴ ko:n³ ma¹ keu³ tao⁵ saeng⁴
ga:p³ mia³ lao³ tan² bu:n¹ tohng³
tan² mi:n³ la³

meuang³ lao³ mi³ meuang³ nyai:² keu³
wiang³ cha:n¹.

yu² dtai:³ lat⁶ mi² lai⁴ yang² keu³
mak⁶ le:n³ ga:³ la:m² bpl⁶ pa:k³
bua²

Such as, like

There are many kinds, such as banana, orange and papaya.

There are many people present such as Mr. Seng and his wife, Mrs. Bounthong and Mr. Miller.

Laos has big cities such as Vientiane.

In the market there are many things like tomatoes, cabbages, and onions.

7-4

ຊົນລຸນ, ຊົນເທິງ

ມີເຂົາມາຫາເຈົ້າຢູ່ຊົນລຸນ

ແມ່ນອນຢູ່ຊົນເທິງ

ຢູ່ຊົນເທິງມີຄົນເຈົ້າຢູ່

ຂ້ອຍໄປເອົາເງິນຢູ່ຊົນເທິງ

sa:n⁵ lu:m³, sa:n⁵ ter:ng²mi³ kaek⁴ ma³ ha⁴ chao:⁵ yu² sa:n⁵mae² nohn³ yu² sa:n⁵ ter:ng²yu² sa:n⁵ teu:ng⁴ mi³ ko:n³ sao:²
yu²kohy⁴ bpai:¹ ao:¹ nger:n³ yu²
sa:n⁵ ter:ng²Downstairs, upstairs

A visitor came to see you downstairs.

Mother sleeps upstairs.

There is a tenant upstairs.

I'll go upstairs to get (my)
money.

7-5

ດ້ວຍ

ເຮືອນຂ້ອຍເຮັດດ້ວຍດິນຈີ່

ຫຼັງຄາບ້ານຂ້ອຍມຸງດ້ວຍດິນຂີ່

ນີ້ເຮັດດ້ວຍຫຍັງ

duay⁵heuan³ kohy⁴ he:t¹ duay⁵ di:n¹
chi²la:ng⁴ ka³ ban⁵ kohy⁴ mu:ng³ duay⁵
di:n¹ koh⁴ni⁵ he:t¹ duay⁵ nya:ng⁴By (means of), with, of

My house is made of bricks.

The roof of my house is covered
with tiles.

What is this made of?

7-6

ກິນເຂົ້າ

ເຈົ້າກິນເຂົ້າແລ້ວບໍ່

ລາວກິນເຂົ້າແລງນາກັນກັບຄອບຄົວຂອງລາວ

ກິນເຂົ້ານາກັນຊຸ

ຂະເຈົ້າໄປກິນເຂົ້າຢູ່ໃນເມືອງ

gi:n¹ kao:⁶chao:⁵ gi:n¹ kao:⁶ laew⁵ boh²lao² gi:n¹ kao:⁶ laeng³ na:m³ ga:n³
ga:p³ kohp⁵ kua³ kohng⁴ lao³gi:n¹ kao:⁶ na:m³ ga:n³ sa:²ka:² chao:⁵ bpai:¹ gi:n¹ kao:⁶
yu² nai:³ meuang³To have a meal, to eat

Have you had a meal yet?

He eats his dinner with his family.

Let's have a meal together.

They went to eat in town.

7-7 ນອນ

ເດັກນ້ອຍໄປນອນແລ້ວບໍ່

ຂອຍຢາກນອນ

ຂອຍບໍ່ຢາກນອນເຮັດວຽກອີກກໍໄດ້

ລາວນອນດົນ

nohn³

de:k³ nohy⁵ bpai:¹ nohn³ laew⁵ boh⁷

kohy⁴ yak⁴ nohn³

kohy⁴ boh³ yak⁴ nohn³ he:t² wiak⁵
ik⁴ goh¹ dai:⁵

lao³ nohn³ do:n¹ do:n¹

To sleep

Did the children go to bed yet?

I want to sleep. (I'm sleepy)

I don't want to sleep. I can still work.

He slept for a long time.

7-8 ຂ້າງຫຼັງ

ບ້ານຂອຍຢູ່ຂ້າງຫຼັງວັດ

ທົນມະດາເຮືອນຄົວຕັ້ງຢູ່ຂ້າງຫຼັງເຮືອນໃຫຍ່

ຂະເຈົ້າຢູ່ຂ້າງຫຼັງ

ຢູ່ຂ້າງຫຼັງບໍ່ມີບ່ອນ

kang⁴ la:ng⁴

ban⁵ kohy⁴ yu² kang⁴ la:ng⁴ wa:t² My house is behind a temple.

ta:m³ ma:² da¹ heuan³ kua³ ta:ng⁵
yu² kang⁴ la:ng⁴ heuan³ nyai⁵

Behind

Usually the kitchen is behind the main house.

ka:³ chao:⁵ yu² kang⁴ la:ng⁴

They are in back of it.

yu² kang⁴ la:ng⁴ boh² mi² bohn²

There is no place behind it.

7-9 ອື່ນ

ຂອຍຢູ່ແຕ່ວຽງຈັນ ບໍ່ເຄີຍໄປເມືອງອື່ນ

ທາງນີ້ບໍ່ດີ ໄປທາງອື່ນ ຊະ

ຢູ່ໃນຫ້ອງນີ້ບໍ່ມີ ໄປເບິ່ງຫ້ອງອື່ນ

eun²

kohy⁴ yu² dtae² wiang³ cha:n,¹ boh²
kery³ bpai:¹ meuang³ eun²

Other

I have lived only in Vientiane and never been to other cities.

tang³ ni⁴ boh² di:¹ bpai:¹ tang³
eun² sa:²

This road is not good. Why don't you take another road?

yu² nai³ hohng⁴ ni⁵ boh² mi² bpai:¹
beu:ng² hohng⁴ eun²

It's not in this room. Go and look in the other rooms.

7-10

ສ່ວນ

ທາງນີ້ສ່ວນນຶ່ງບໍ່ໄດ້ ໄປບໍ່ໄດ້

ນີ້ແຕ່ສ່ວນນຶ່ງ ບໍ່ແນ່ນອນ

ສ່ວນຂອງຂ້ອຍ ຂ້ອຍເຮັດວຽກອື່ນ

ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້ຈັກເລື່ອງສ່ວນຂອງລາວ

ພໍເອົາມາໃຫ້ຂ້ອຍສ່ວນນຶ່ງ, ໃຫ້ລາວສ່ວນນຶ່ງ

suan²

tang³ ni⁵ mi³ suan² neu:ng² boh²
di' bpai:' boh² dai:'

ni⁵ mi³ dtae² suan² neu:ng² boh²
maen² mo:t³

suan² kohng² kohy² kohy² he:t²
wiak⁵ eun²

kohy² boh² hu⁵ cha:k³ leuang²
suan² kohng² lao³

poh² ao:' ma³ hai:' kohy² suan²
neu:ng², hai:' lao³ suan²
neu:ng²

A part, section, portion

This road has one bad section. You can't go.

This is just a part of it, not the whole.

For my part, I'll do some other work.

I don't know his side of the story.

Father gave me a portion and him a portion, too.

7-11

ບ່ອນ

ມີບ່ອນນຶ່ງບໍ່

ບ່ອນນີ້ງາມຂ້ອຍນັກຫຼາຍ

ຢາກກິນເຂົ້າຢູ່ນີ້ແຕ່ມີບ່ອນ

ເຊົ່າເຮັດການຢູ່ບ່ອນເກົ່າບໍ່

bohn²

mi' bohn² na:ng² boh²

bohn³ ni⁵ ngam² kohy² ma:k² lai²

yak⁴ gi:n¹ kao:⁴ yu² ni⁵ dtae² boh²
mi³ bohn²

chao:⁵ he:t² gan¹ yu² bohn² gao:²
boh²

Place

Is there any place to sit?

This is a beautiful place. I like it very much.

We want to eat here, but there isn't any place (to sit).

Do you still work at the (same) old place?

7-12 ຈອດ

ຈອດຣົດຢູ່ບ່ອນນີ້ໄດ້ບໍ່

ຈອດຣົດທາງໜ້າບ້ານຂະເຈົ້າບໍ່ມີ

ຢູ່ນີ້ຕອນເຊົ້າຈອດຣົດບໍ່ໄດ້

ຈອດນີ້ແດ່ ສາມລໍ

choht⁶

choht⁶ lo:t² yu² bohn³ ni⁵ dai:⁵
boh²

choht⁶ lo:t² tang³ na⁴ ban⁵ ka:³
chao:⁵ boh² ma:k²

yu² ni⁵ dtohn¹ sao:⁵ choht⁶ lo:t²
boh² dai:⁵

choht⁶ ni⁵ dae² sam² loh⁵

To park, to stop

Can I park a car here?

They don't like parking cars in front of the house.

You can't park here in the morning.

Stop here, Samloh.

7-13 ທາງໜ້າ

ທາງໜ້າບ້ານເຈົ້າມີຫຍັງ

ຢູ່ທາງໜ້າມີສວນ ແລະ ຂອບປູກເຄື່ອງ

ຢູ່ທາງໜ້າຕາລາດມີບ່ອນຈອດຣົດ

ຂະເຈົ້າຖ້າເຈົ້າຢູ່ໜ້າໂຮງການ

tang³ na⁴

tang³ na⁴ ban⁵ chao:⁵ mi³ nya:ng⁴

yu² tang³ na⁴ mi³ suan⁴ lae:² kohy⁴
bpuk⁶ keuang²

yu² tang³ na⁴ dta:³ lat⁴ mi³ bohn²
choht⁶ lo:t²

ka:³ chao:⁵ ta⁴ chao:⁵ yu² na⁴
hong³ gan¹

In front of

What is in front of your house?

In front, we have a garden and I plant trees and flowers.

There is a parking lot in front of the market.

They are waiting for you in front of your office.

7-14

ກ້ອງ

ບໍ່ຢູ່ເທິງແຕ່ຢູ່ກ້ອງ

ຢູ່ກ້ອງເຮືອນມີບ່ອນຈອດຣົດ

gohng⁵

boh² yu² ter:ng² dtae² yu² gohng⁵

yu² gohng⁵ heuan³ mi³ bohn² choht⁶
lo:t²

Under, below

It is not upstairs, but downstairs.

There is a parking space under the house.

ບົດຮຽນທີ ໔

1. ຂ້ອຍນາຢູ່ເມືອງລາວໄດ້ປີປາຍແລ້ວ
2. ດຽວນີ້ເຊົ່າເຮືອນຫຼັງນີ້ຢູ່ໃນວຽງຈັນ
3. ເຮືອນຂ້ອຍມີ ສອງຊັ້ນຄື ຊັ້ນລຸ່ມແລະຊັ້ນເທິງ ແລະເປັນ ເຮືອນດິນຈີ່
4. ຫຼັງການຸງດ້ວຍດິນຂໍສີແດງ.
5. ຢູ່ຊັ້ນລຸ່ມມີຫ້ອງສານຫ້ອງຄື ຫ້ອງຮັບແຂກ ຫ້ອງກິນເຂົ້າ ແລະຫ້ອງເຮັດວຽກ ຂອງຂ້ອຍ
6. ເຮືອນຄົວຕັ້ງຢູ່ຂ້າງຫຼັງສິກັ້ນກັບບ້ານອື່ນຢູ່ໃນເມືອງລາວ.
7. ຢູ່ຊັ້ນເທິງມີຫ້ອງນອນ ແລະຫ້ອງອາບນ້ຳ
8. ສ່ວນນີ້ງຂອງຊັ້ນເທິງແມ່ນເຊັ່ນຄືເຮືອນຮ້ານແບບລາວ ແລະນີ້ຍ່ອນຈອດຮົດຢູ່ກ່ອນ
9. ຢູ່ທາງໜ້າແລະອອນເຮືອນມີສ່ວນທີ່ເຮົາປູກເຄື່ອງປູກຫຼາຍຢ່າງ.

1. Kohy⁶ ma³ yu² meuang³ lao³ dai:⁵ bpi¹ bpai¹ laew⁵.
2. Diaw¹ ni⁵ sao:² heuan³ la:ng⁴ neu:ng² yu² nai:³ wiang³ cha:n¹.
3. Heuan³ kohy⁶ mi³ sohng⁴ sa:n⁵ keu³ sa:n⁵ lu:m² lae:² sa:n⁵ ter:ng lae: bpe:n heuan³ di:n¹ chi¹.
4. La:ng⁴ ka³ mu:ng³ duay⁵ di:n¹ koh⁴ si⁴ daeng¹.
5. Yu² sa:n⁵ lu:m² mi³ hohng⁵ sam⁴ hohng⁶ keu³ hohng⁶ la:p² kaek⁶ hohng⁶ gi:n¹ kao:⁶ lae:² hohng⁶ he:t² wiak⁵ kohng⁴ kohy⁶.
6. Heuan³ kua³ dta:ng⁵ yu² kang⁶ la:ng⁴ keu³ ga:n¹ ga:p³ ban⁵ eun² eun² nai:³ meuang³ lao³.
7. Yu² sa:n⁵ ter:ng³ mi³ hohng⁶ nohn³ lae:² hohng⁶ ap⁶ na:m⁵.
8. Suan² neu:ng² kohng⁴ sa:n⁵ ter:ng³ maen² sia³ keu² heuan³ han⁵ bpaep⁶ lao³, lae:² mi³ bohn² choht⁶ lo:t² yu² kohng⁵.
9. Yu² tang³ na⁶ lae:² ohm⁵ heuan³ mi³ suan⁴ ti² hao:³ bpuk⁶ keuang² bpuk⁶ lai⁴ yang².

LESSON 7: RENTING A HOUSE

1. I came to live in Laos more than a year ago.
2. At present I'm renting one house in Vientiane.
3. My house has two stories which are downstairs and upstairs and it is made of bricks.
4. The roof is covered with red tiles.
5. Downstairs (we have) 3 rooms which are a salon, a dining room and my study.
6. The kitchen stands behind like in other houses in Laos.
7. Upstairs (we have) bedrooms and a bathroom.
8. One part of the second floor is the veranda, like in Lao-style houses on stilts, and there is a place to park a car underneath it.
9. In front and all around the house, there is a garden where we grow many kinds of plants.

LESSON 8: PAYING A VISIT

Substitution Exercise

ເຈົ້າຮູ້ວິທາງໄປ ເຈົ້າຮູ້ວິທາງໄປ	ປີ	ຮູ້ ຮູ້
ທາດຫຼວງ ປາມຂອງ ຕລາດແລງ		

chao: ⁵ hu ⁵ cha:k ³ tang ³ bpai: ¹	boh ²	hu ⁵ yu ¹
tat ⁵ luang ⁴ ban ⁵ kohy ⁶ dta: ³ lat ⁶ laeng ³		

Do you know which way to go	?	Yes.
(to) That Luang (to) the evening market (to) my house		

ກິນນ້ຳຫຽ້ງ
ກິນຫຽ້ງ

ຂົນນ້ຳເໝັມ
ຂົນພາກກວຍ
ຂົນນ້ຳພາກກວ້ງ
ຂົນນ້ຳພາກເລັມ

gi:n ¹ na:m ⁵ nya:ng ⁵	koh ⁴ na:m ⁵ ye:n ¹
gi:n ¹ nya:ng ⁵	koh ⁴ mak ⁶ guay ⁵
	koh ⁴ na:m ⁵ mak ⁶ giang ⁵
	koh ⁴ na:m ⁵ mak ⁶ le:n ²

What drink do you want?	Cold water, please.
What do you want to eat?	Bananas, please.
	Orange juice, please.
	Tomato juice, please.

ໄປ	ນຳໄວ	ໄປນຳພ້ອມ
ມາ		ມານຳພ້ອມດີຮັງ
ປູ້		ປູ້ນຳອາບຂ້ອຍ
ຮຽນ		ຮຽນນຳນາຍຄຣູ
ເວົ້າ		ເວົ້ານຳພ້ອມຂ້ອຍ

bpai:¹ na:m³ pai:	bpai:¹ na:m³ mu² kohy ⁴
ma³	ma³ na:m³ mu² ko:n³ fa:³ la:ng²
yu²	yu² na:m³ ay¹ kohy ⁴
hian³	hian³ na:m³ nai³ ku³
wao:⁵	wao:⁵ na:m³ pua⁴ kohy ⁴

(Do you)	Go	with who?	(I) go with my friend.
	Come		come with my foreign friend.
	Stay		stay with my older brother.
	Study		study with my teacher.
	Speak		speak with my husband.

ເນື້ອໃດມີເວລານາຫາຂ້ອຍແດ່
 ສບາຍດີ ເປັນຢ່າງໃດ
 ສບາຍເປັນຢ່າງໃດ
 ເຊິນັ້ງດີ
 (ເນນຸ)

ຂອບໃຈ ຊິໄປຫາເຈົ້າ
 ສບາຍດີ ນັ້ນຂ້ອຍມີວຽກຫຼາຍ
 ສບາຍ ນັ້ນບໍ່ມີວຽກຫຼັງ
 ຂອບໃຈ . ຂໍນຳເຢັນ
 (ເນນ)

meua² dai:¹ mi³ we³ la³ ma³ ha³
 kohy ⁴ dae²
 sa:³ bai⁴ di¹, bpe:n¹ yang¹ dai³
 sa:³ bai⁴ bpe:n¹ yang¹ dai:¹
 seun³ na:ng¹ dti:³
 maen² boh²

kohp ⁴ chai:¹ si:² bpai:¹ ha⁴ chao:⁵
 sa:³ bai⁴ di¹, meu⁴ ni⁵ kohy ⁴ mi³ wiak⁵ lai⁴
 sa:³ bai⁴ meu⁴ ni⁵ boh² mi³ wiak⁵ nya:ng⁴
 kohp ⁴ chai:¹ koh⁴ na:m³ ye:n¹
 maen²

When you have time come to see me please.
 Hello! How are you?
 Hello! How are you
 Please sit down.
 Isn't it so?

Thank you. I will go see you.
 Hello. Today I have a lot of work.
 Hello. Today I don't have any work.
 Thank you. Could I have some cold water?
 Yes.

ຈາກ	ນີ້	ໄປຍັກ
ວຽງຈັນ		
ບ້ານຂອງ		
ໂຮງການເຈົ້າ		
ຕະຫຼາດ		

chak ⁶	ni ⁵	bpai: ¹ boh ² gai: ¹
wiang ³	cha:n ¹	
ban ⁵	kohy ⁶	
hohng ³	gan ¹ chao: ⁵	
dta: ³	lat ⁶	

From	here	it isn't far to go.
	Vientiane	
	my house	
	your office	
	the market	

ແຕ່	ຂອງ	ເຈົ້າ	ຢູ່	ທີ່
		ລາວ		
		ເພິ່ນ		
				ໄປ ບ້ານນັ້ນ
				ມານີ້
				ນັກເຮັດແບບນີ້
				ກິນເຂົ້ານໍ້າຂະເຈົ້າ
				ກິນເປັນນິສ
				ຄຽງໜັງສື
				ສອນໜັງສື
				ຂັບຮົດ

dtae ²	gi ⁵	kohy ⁶	kery ³	yu ²	ha:n ⁶
		chao: ⁵			
		lao ³			
		per:n ²			
					bpai: ¹ boh ² na:n ⁵
					ma ³ ni ⁵
					ma:k ⁴ he:t ² baep ⁶ ni ⁵
					gi:n ¹ kao: ⁶ na:m ³ ka: ³ chao: ⁵
					lin ⁴ te:n ³ nit ²
					hian ³ na:ng ⁴ seu ⁴
					sohn ⁴ na:ng ⁴ seu ⁴
					ka:p ³ lo:t ²

Before	I	used to	live there.
	you		go to that place.
	he		come here.
	they		like to work like this.
			eat with them.
			play tennis.
			study.
			teach.
			drive a car.

ເມັ່ນໂດນີ	ເງິນຊື້
	ຄົນນາກາ ຄົນປາກໂປ ເວລາທີ່ເຮັດນິສ , ບອນຈອດ ເຮືອນໃຫ້ເຊົ່າ ຮີດຂາຍ

meua ² dai: ¹ mi ³	nger:n ⁷ seu ⁵
	ko:n ⁷ ma ³ ha ⁴ ko:n ⁷ yak ⁴ bpai: ¹ we ³ la ³ lin ⁴ te:n ³ nit ² bohn ² chot ⁴ heuan ⁷ hai: ⁴ sao: ² lo:t ² kai ⁴

When will you have	money to buy it?
	people to come to see it? people who want to go? time to play tennis? a space to stop? a house to let? a car for sale?

ມີ	ເຮືອນຂາຍ	ຢູ່ເບື້ອງ	ຂວາ	ປ
	ຮ້ານຂາຍກາ ເຟ ຮ້ານຂາຍຂອງ ວັດນອຍ ໂຮງການ ບອນຈອດຮີດ		ຊ້າຍ	

mi ³	heuan ⁷ kai ⁴	yu ² beuang ⁵	kwa ⁴ boh ²
	lan ⁵ kai ⁴ ga ¹ fe ² lan ⁵ kai ⁴ kohng ⁴ wat ² nohy ⁵ hohng ³ gan ¹ bohn ² chcht ⁴ lo:t ²		sai ⁵

Is there	a house for sale	on the side	right ?
	a coffee shop		left
	a general store		
	a small temple		
	an office		
	a parking space		

ເຮືອນ	ທີ່ສອງເນມ	ເຮືອນຂອຍ
ຄົມ		ຝ
ສອງ		ສອງ
ຮີດ		ຮີດ
ສັງ		ບ້ານ
ຄັມ		ຮີດ

heuan ⁷	ti ² sohng ⁴ maen ²	heuan ⁷	kohy ⁶
ko:n ³		pch ²	
hohng ⁴		hohng ⁴	
lo:t ²		lo:t ²	
la:ng ⁴		ban ⁵	
ka:n ⁷		lo:t ²	
House	the second is	house	mine.
Person		father	
Room		room	
Car		car	
Building		house	
Machine		car	

Vocabulary Exercise

8-1 ຈາກນີ້ໄປ

ຈາກນີ້ໄປຕະຫຼາດເຊົ້າ ເທົ່າໃດ

ຈາກນີ້ໄປຍ້ານເຈົ້າໂກບ

ຈາກນີ້ໄປຂຽວງຂວາງຈັກກິໂລ

ຈາກນີ້ໄປເມືອງນັ້ນ ມີສາມສິບກິໂລ

8-2 ໄກ

ບ້ານຂ້ອຍໄກຫຼາຍ

ຕະຫຼາດແລງໄກ ເອົາຮີດແກກຊີເປດີ

ໂຮງການຢູ່ໄກ ທັນມະດາກໍເອົາຮີດໄປ

8-3 ແຕ່ນີ້

ແຕ່ນີ້ເຜົ່າສອນຢູ່ວິທຍາລັຍ

ບ້ານຂ້ອຍແຕ່ນີ້ ຢູ່ໃກ້ວັດນັ້ນ

ຮີດຄັນນີ້ ຂ້ອຍຊື້ແຕ່ນີ້ ຕົມແລວ ແຕ່ດຽວນີ້ເກົ່າຫຼາຍ

ແຕ່ນີ້ ລາວມີເຮືອນຫຼັງໃຫຍ່ຢູ່ແຖວນີ້

chak⁴ ni⁵ bpai:¹

chak⁴ ni⁵ bpai:¹ dta:³ lat⁴ sao:⁵
tao:² dai:¹

chak⁴ ni⁵ bpai:¹ ban⁵ chao:⁵ gai:¹
boh²

chak⁴ ni⁵ bpai:¹ siang³ kwang⁴
cha:k⁴ gi¹ lo³

chak⁴ ni⁵ bpai:¹ meuang³ na:n⁵ mi³
sam⁴ si:p³ gi¹ lo³

gai:¹

ban⁵ kohy⁴ gai:¹ lai⁴

dta:³ lat⁴ laeng³ gai:¹ ao:¹ lo:t³
taek⁵ si³ bpai:¹ di¹

hong³ gan¹ yu² gai:¹ ta:m³ ma:² da¹
goh¹ ao:¹ lo:t³ bpai:¹

dtae² gi⁵

dtae² gi⁵ per:n² sohn⁴ yu² wi:¹
ta:² nya³ lai:³

ban⁵ kohy⁴ dtae² gi⁵ yu² gai:⁵ wa:t³
na:n⁵

lo:t² ka:n³ ni⁵ kohy⁶ seu⁵ dtae² gi⁵
do:n¹ laew⁵ dtae² diaw¹ ni⁵ gao:²
lai⁴

dtae² gi⁵ lao¹ mi³ heuan² la:ng⁴
nyai:² yu² taew¹ ni⁵

From here to...

How much is it from here to the morning market?

It is far from here to your house?

How many kilometers are there from here to Xieng Khouang?

It is 30 kilometers from here to that city.

Far

My house is very far.

The evening market is far. You'd better go by taxi.

The office is far. I usually go by car.

Before, formerly

Formerly he was teaching at the high school.

My old house was near that temple.

This car is the one I bought before, but it's very old now.

Before he used to have a big house in this area.

8-4 ບໍ່

ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ເຄີຍກິນ

ບໍ່ ບໍ່ຮູ້

boh¹

boh¹, kohy⁶ boh² kery³ gi:n¹

boh¹, boh² hu⁵

Is that so?

Is that so? I have never eaten it.

Is that so? I don't know.

8-5 ເມື່ອໃດ

ເມື່ອໃດມີເງິນຊື້ ຂ້ອຍຈະຊື້

ເມື່ອໃດມີເວລາຂ້ອຍຈະມາອີກ

ເມື່ອໃດຂະເຈົ້າມາວຽງຈັນ ຂະເຈົ້າໄປຊື້ຂອງຜູ້ຕຸລາດ

ເມື່ອໃດລາວຢາກໄດ້ເງິນ ລາວຂໍນໍາເມັ

meua² dai:¹

meua² dai:¹ mi³ nger:n³ seu⁵
kohy⁶ cha:³ seu⁵

meua² dai:¹ mi³ we³ la³ kohy⁶ cha:³
ma³ ik⁴

meua² dai:¹ ka:³ chao:⁵ ma³ wiang³
cha:n¹ ka:³ chao:⁵ bpai:¹ seu⁵

kohng⁴ yu⁴ dta:³ lat⁶
meua² dai:¹ lao³ yak⁶ dai:¹ nger:n³
lao³ koh⁴ na:m³ mae²

When, whenever

When(ever) I have money, I'll buy it.

When(ever) I have time, I'll come again.

When they come to Vientiane, they go shopping at the market.

When he wants money, he asks his mother for it.

8-6 ເມື່ອໃດ

ເມື່ອໃດຊື້ໄປ

ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້ວ່າ ຂະເຈົ້າ ຊື້ມາເມື່ອໃດ

ເມື່ອໃດເຈົ້າຢາກມາບຸກຜູ້ນີ້

ເມື່ອໃດ ລາວຊື້ໄປຮຽນຢູ່ອະເມຣິກາ

meua² dai:¹

meua² dai:¹ si:² bpai:¹

kohy⁶ boh² hu⁶ wa² ka:³ chao:⁵ si:²
ma³ meua² dai:¹

meua² dai:¹ chao:⁵ yak⁶ ma³ yu⁴
ni⁵

meua² dai:¹ lao³ si:² bpai:¹ hian³
yu⁴ a:³ me³ li³ ga¹

When?

When shall we go? When do you go?

I don't know when they will come.

When do you want to come to live here?

When does he go to study in America?

8-7 ເວລາ

ເຈົ້າມີເວລາບໍ່ດຽວນີ້
ບໍ່ມີເວລາຫຼາຍ ນີ້ທ່ານາອີກໄດ້ຍັງ
ເວລານີ້ ທ່ານມະຕາຂ້ອຍຢູ່ບ້ານ
ເວລານັ້ນ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້ວ່າ ລາວເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງ

8-8 ຮ້ານ

ແຕວນີ້ມີຮ້ານຫຼາຍ
ຂ້ອຍຊື້ຢູ່ຮ້ານນັ້ນ
ເປັນຮ້ານນ້ອຍ ໆ ແຕ່ຂາຍກາເຟແຈຍ
ເຈົ້າຂອງຮ້ານນັ້ນ ມີລົດໃຫຍ່ວ່າຄົນນຶ່ງ

8-9 ກາເຟ

ກາເຟລາວຢູ່ຫຼືໃສ
ກາເຟແນວນີ້ແຈຍ
ເຈົ້ານັກກິນກາເຟບໍ່

8-10 ຂ້າງ

ຢູ່ຂ້າງບ້ານລາວນີ້ນາ (ກວ້າງ)
ຮ້ານຂອງຂະເຈົ້າຢູ່ຂ້າງກລາດເຈົ້າ
ມີສວນງາມຢູ່ຂ້າງວິທຍາໄລ

we' la'

chao: f mi' we' la' boh' diaw' ni' f
boh' mi' we' la' lai' meu' na' ma' f
ik' dai: f boh' f
we' la' ni' ta: m' ma: da' kohy' yu' f
ban' f
we' la' na: n' kohy' boh' hu' wa' lao' f
bpe: n' chao: f kohng' f
han' f
taew' ni' mi' han' lai' f
kohy' seu' yu' han' na: n' f
bpe: n' han' nohy' nohy' dtae' kai' f
ga' fe' saep' f
chao: f kohng' han' na: n' mi' lo: t' f
nyai: f ka: n' neu: ng' f

ga' fe'

ga' fe' lao' bpuk' yu' sai: f
ga' fe' naew' ni' saep' f
chao: f ma: k' gi: n' ga' fe' boh' f

kang'

yu' kang' ban' lao' mi' na' (gwang' f)
han' kohng' ka: f chao: f yu' kang' f
dta: f lat' sao: f
mi' suan' gam' yu' kang' f
wi: f tai: hya' lai: f

Time

Do you have time (to spare) now?
I don't have much time. Can you come again on another day?
Now I usually stay home.
At that time, I did not know that he was the owner.
Shop, store
This street has many shops.
I buy at that store.

It is a small shop but (they) sell good coffee.
The owner of that store has a big car.

Coffee

Where do they grow Lao coffee?
This kind of coffee is tasty.
Do you like drinking coffee?
At the side of, beside, next to
Next to his house is a (large) rice-field.
Their shop is at the side of the Morning market.
There is a nice garden beside the high school.

8-11 ແນ່ນຍ໌

ເຈົ້າຂັບຮີດເຈົ້າໄປແນ່ນຍ໌

ນີ້ແນ່ນຍ໌ຂອງເຈົ້າແນ່ນຍ໌

ເຈົ້າເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງແນ່ນຍ໌

ມື້ວັນເສົາ ຂະເຈົ້າບໍ່ເຮັດການ ແນ່ນຍ໌

8-12 ຕໍ່ໄປ

ວັນເສົາຕໍ່ໄປ ແນ່ນຍ໌ທຶດ

ຕໍ່ບ້ານຂະເຈົ້າໄປແນ່ນຍ໌ບ້ານຂອງ

8-13 ເຂົ້າໄປ (ມາ)

ລາວເຂົ້າໄປຮ້ານກາເຟ

ມີທາງນ້ອຍເສັ້ນນຶ່ງ ເຂົ້າໄປນາ

ເຂົ້ານານຶ່ງຕັ້ງມີ ຊະ

ດຽວນີ້ເຂົ້າມາທ້ອງບໍ່ໂດດດອກ

8-14 ຄິດ

ຂ້ອຍຄິດເຮັດໂຕດຽວ

ລາວຄິດຊື້ລາວມີແລ້ວ

ຂ້ອຍວາບໍ່ງາມ ເຈົ້າຄິດຊື້ນັກດອກ

ຄິດຊື້ນີ້ໃນທ້ອງນອນຂ້ອຍ

maen² boh²

chao:⁵ ka:p³ lo:t² chao:⁵ bpai:¹
maen² boh²

ni:⁵ maen² kohng⁴ chao:⁵ mean² boh²

chao:⁵ bpe:n¹ chao:⁵ kohng⁴ maen²
boh²

meu:⁵ wa:n³ sao:⁴ ka:³ chao:⁵ boh²
he:t³ gan¹ maen² boh²

dtoh² bpai:¹

wa:n³ sao:⁴ dtoh² bpai:¹ maen²
wa:n³ ti:t²

dto:² ban⁵ ka:³ chao:⁵ bpai:¹ maen²
ban⁵ kohy⁶

kao:⁶ bpai:¹ (ma³)

lao³ kao:⁶ bpai:¹ han⁵ ga¹ fe³

mi:³ tang³ nohy⁵ se:n⁴ neung² kao:⁶
bpai:¹ na²

kao:⁶ ma³ na:ng² dta:ng² ni⁵ sa:²

diaw¹ ni⁵ kao:⁶ ma³ hohng⁶ boh²
dai:⁵ dohk⁶

keu³ si:²

kohy⁶ keu³ si:² he:t³ dai:⁵ pu⁶
diaw¹

lao³ keu³ si:² boh² seu:⁵ lao³ mi:³
laew⁵

kohy⁶ wa:² boh² ngam³ chao:⁵ keu³ si:²
boh² ma:³ k² dohk⁶

keu³ si:² yu³ nai:³ hohng⁶ nohn³
kohy⁶

Isn't it? (tag question)

You are going to drive your car, aren't you?

This is yours, isn't it?

You are the owner, aren't you?

They don't work on Saturday, do they?

Next to, after

After Saturday, it is Sunday.

Next to their house is my house.

To go in (to come in), enter

He went into a coffee shop.

There is a small lane going into the rice-field.

Come in and sit on this chair, won't you?

Don't come into the room now.

It seems to me, I think that

I think I can do it alone.

I think he won't buy it. He already has one.

I say it's not nice. I think you won't like it at all.

I think it's in my bedroom.

8-15 ຫາ

ເຈົ້າຫາຫ້ວງ

ຂ້ອຍຫາເຮືອນໃຫ້ເຈົ້າຫ້ວງນີ້

ລາວຫາອົງລາວ ດົນ ດົນ ແຕ່ນ້ອງບໍ່ຢູ່

ລາວຫາເງິນໂດ່ແລວບໍ່

ha⁺

chao:^f ha⁺ nya:ng⁺

kohy⁺ ha⁺ heuan⁺ hai:⁶ sao:²
la:ng⁺ neu:ng²

lao⁺ ha⁺ nohng⁺ lao⁺ do:n⁺ do:n⁺
dtae² nohng⁺ boh² yu²

lao⁺ ha⁺ nger:n⁺ dai:^f laew^f boh²

To look for

What are you looking for?

I'm looking for a house to rent.

He looked for his younger sister
for a long time, but he didn't
find her.

Has he found the money yet?

8-16 ເປັນຢ່າງໃດ

ວຽກຂອງເຈົ້າເປັນຢ່າງໃດ

ເມັງເຈົ້າເປັນຢ່າງໃດ

ລູກລາວເປັນຢ່າງໃດ

bpe:n⁺ yang² dai:¹

wiak³ kohng⁺ chao:^f bpe:n⁺ yang²
dai:¹

mia³ chao:^f bpe:n⁺ yang² dai:¹

luk^f lao³ bpe:n⁺ yang² dai:¹

How is .../(everything)?

How is your work going on?

How is your wife?

How is his child?

193

8-17 ບໍ່.....ຫ້ວງ (ໃສ, ຈັກ ...)

ບໍ່ຊື້ຫ້ວງ ເບິ່ງຊື້

ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ໄປກິດຫ້ວງ

ລາວບໍ່ໄປໃສ ຢູ່ບ້ານຊື້

ເຈົ້າບໍ່ມາຫາຂ້ອຍຈັກເທື່ອ

boh... nya:ng⁺ (sai:⁴, cha:k³)

boh² seu^f nya:ng⁺, beu:ng³ seu² seu²

kohy⁺ boh² yak⁺ dai:^f nya:ng⁺

lao³ boh² bpai:¹ sai:⁴, yu³ ban^f
seu² seu²

chao:^f boh² ma³ ha⁺ kohy⁺ cha:k³
teua²

Not any...

I won't buy anything. I'm just
looking.

I don't want anything.

He does not go anywhere; he's
always at home.

You never come to see me at all.

8-18 ມີ (See also p.155/7.3)

ຂ້ອຍຖ້າລາວມີ ລາວກໍບໍ່ມາ

ລາວວ່າ ລາວໂຫ້ເຈົ້າຫຼາຍ ເຈົ້າກໍບໍ່ມັກລາວ

ໄປສູ່ບໍ່ມີ

ຫາຫຼາຍບ່ອນ ລາວກໍບໍ່ຢູ່

goh¹

kohy⁴ ta⁴ lao³ do:n¹ do:n¹ lao³
goh¹ boh¹ ma³

lao³ wa² lao³ ma:k² chao:⁵ lai⁴ chao:⁵
goh¹ boh¹ ma:k² lao³
bpai:¹ sai:⁴ goh¹ boh¹ mi³

ha⁴ lai⁴ bohn² lao³ goh¹ boh¹ yu²

(Particle showing a change of subject or topic in the latter half of a sentence.)

I waited for her for a long time, but she didn't come.

He says he likes you a lot, but you don't like him.

I went everywhere, but I couldn't find any.

We looked many places, but could not find him.

8-19 ຂີ້

ຂໍເງິນແດ່ແນ່

ຂ້ອຍຂໍນ້ຳ ນ້ຳເປັນນ້ຳນົມ

ລາວຂໍສິບພັນ ນາຍກໍເອົາໄຫ້ແຕ່ແປດພັນ

ລາວຂໍເງິນນ້ຳພໍລາວ

koh⁴

koh⁴ nger:n³ dae² mae²

kohy⁴ koh⁴ na:m⁵ na:m⁵ ye:n¹ ye:n¹
mi³ boh²

lao³ koh⁴ si:p³ pa:n³ nai³ goh¹ ao:¹
hai:⁴ dtae² bpaet⁴ pa:n³

lao³ koh⁴ nger:n³ na:m³ poh² lao³

To beg, to want

Mother, I want some money.

I want some water. Do you have very cold water?

He wants 10,000, but the boss gave (him) only 8,000.

He asks his father for money.

8-20 ຫິວນ້ຳ , ຫິວເຂົ້າ

ຫິວນ້ຳ ຂ້ອນ້ຳແດ່

ມື້ນີ້ຫິວນ້ຳຫຼາຍ

ຫິວເຂົ້າແລ້ວບໍ່

ກິນຫຼາຍກໍຍັງຫິວເຂົ້າ

hiw⁴ na:m⁵ hiw⁴ kao:⁶

hiw⁴ na:m⁵ koh⁴ na:m⁵ dae²

meu⁵ ni⁵ hiw⁴ na:m⁵ lai⁴

hiw⁴ kao:⁶ laew⁵ boh²

gi:n¹ lai⁴ goh¹ nya:ng³ hiw⁴ kao:⁶

To be thirsty, to be hungry

I'm thirsty. I want some water.

Today I'm very thirsty.

Are you hungry yet?

(He) eats a lot, but (he) is still hungry.

8-21 ບາກ

ພາສາລາວຮຽນບາກ

ບໍ່ບາກດອກ ຮຽນອີກຫຼາກ

ບໍ່ບາກ ບໍ່ງ່າຍ

ເຮັດງານນີ້ເວົ້າບາກ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຢາກເວົ້າ

nyak^f

pa³ sa⁴ lao³ hian³ nyak^f

boh² nyak^f dohk⁴ hian³ ik⁴ lai⁴ lai⁴

boh² nyak^f boh² ngai²

leuang² ni^f wao:^f nyak^f kohy⁴ boh²
yak⁴ wao:^f

Difficult, hard

Lao is hard to learn.

It is not hard at all. Study it a lot.

It is not hard and it's not easy either.

In this case it's hard to say. I don't want to say (anything).

8-22

ງ່າຍ

ພາສາລາວຮຽນງ່າຍ

ຮຽນຂັບຮີດບໍ່ງ່າຍ

ເວົ້າງ່າຍ ແຕ່ເຮັດບາກ

ngai²

pa³ sa⁴ lao³ hian³ ngai² boh²

hian³ ka:p³ lo:t² boh² ngai²

wao:^f ngai² dtae² he:t² nyak^f

Easy

Is Lao easy to learn?

It is not easy to learn to drive a car.

That's easy to say, but hard to do.

8-23

ຂັບ

ເຈົ້າຂັບຮີດເປັນ

ລາວຂັບເປັນ

ລາວເປັນຄົນຂັບຮີດ

ຂະເຈົ້າຂັບຮີດ ດົນ ຯ

ka:p³

chao:⁵ ka:p³ lo:t² bpe:n¹ boh²

lao³ ka:p³ boh² bpe:n¹

lao³ bpe:n¹ ko:n³ ka:p³ lo:t²

ka:³ chao:^f ka:p³ lo:t² do:n¹ do:n¹

To drive (a vehicle)

Can you drive a car?

He can't drive.

He is a driver.

They've been driving for a long time.

8-24 ທີ່ສຸດ (See also p.149/3,5)

ໃຫຍ່ທີ່ສຸດ

ດີທີ່ສຸດ

ຍາກທີ່ສຸດ

ແຂງທີ່ສຸດ

ti² su:t³

nyai:² ti² su:t³

di' ti² su:t³

nyak^f ti² su:t³

paeng³ ti² su:t³

The most, the --est (superlative)

The biggest.

The best.

The most difficult.

The most expensive.

8-25 ຜູ້ດຽວ

ເຈົ້ານາຜູ້ດຽວ

ເຈັດຜູ້ດຽວຍາກຫຼາຍ

ລາວມັກຢູ່ຜູ້ດຽວ

ກິນເຂົ້າຜູ້ດຽວບໍ່ແຂບ

pu⁶ diaw¹

chao:^f ma³ pu⁶ diaw¹ boh²

he:t² pu⁶ diaw¹ nyak^f lai⁴

lao² ma:k² yu² pu⁶ diaw¹

gi:n¹ kao:⁴ pu⁶ diaw¹ boh² saep^f

Alone

Did you come alone?

It is very difficult to do by yourself.

He likes being alone.

Meals are not tasty when you eat alone.

8-26 ພໍ

ນິພໍ

ກິນເຂົ້າພໍແລ້ວ

ພໍແລ້ວບໍ່າກໍ່ໂຕອີກ

poh³

mi³ poh³ boh²

gi:n¹ kao:⁴ poh³ laew^f

poh³ laew^f boh² yak⁶ dai:⁵ ik⁶

Enough, sufficient

Did you have enough?

I have eaten enough.

It is sufficient (they) don't want any more.

ບົດ ຮຽນ ທີ່ ແປດ

1. ບ້ານເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ
2. ຢູ່ໃກ້ວັດສີຖານເພື່ອ ເຈົ້າຮຸ້ຈັກທາງໄປບໍ່ ຈາກນີ້ໄປບໍ່ໄກ
3. ຮູ້ ແຕ່ກໍຂ້ອຍເຄີຍເຂົ້າບ້ານຢູ່ແຖວນັ້ນ
4. ບໍ່ ເມື່ອໃດມີເວລາ ມາຫາຂ້ອຍແດ່
5. ຂ້ອຍໃຈ ຂ້ອຍຮູ້ວ່າ ມີຮ້ານຂາຍກາເຟຢູ່ຂ້າງວັດແນ່ນບໍ່
6. ແນ່ນ ຕໍ່ໄປມີທາງນ້ອຍເສັ້ນນຶ່ງເຂົ້າໄປເບື້ອງຂວາຮ້ານນັ້ນ , ເຮືອນທີ່ສອງເບື້ອງຈ່າຍ
ສອງຊັ້ນ ແນ່ນເຮືອນຂ້ອຍ.
7. ສີຊີຫາໄດ້ ວັນເສົາໜ້າຊີໄປຫາເຈົ້າຢູ່ບ້ານ
(ວັນເສົາ)
8. ສຍາຍດີ ເປັນຢ່າງໃດ
9. ສຍາຍດີ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ມີວຽກຫຍັງນີ້ ໄປໂຮງການກໍ່ນາຍຢູ່ ເຊີນງັດງັດ , ກິນນ້ຳຫຽວ
10. ນ້ຳເປັນຊື່າ ຫຼິ້ນເຫັນນິສືດນ້ຳຫຼາຍ
11. ຫຼິ້ນນຳໃຜ
12. ຫຼິ້ນນຳຄົນຜິດຮົງ ຄົນອະເນຣິກາ ຂະເຈົ້າເກັ່ງຫຼາຍ
13. ຂັບຮີດເຈົ້ານາບ້ານຂ້ອຍທາທາງຍາກບໍ່ ມາເທື່ອທຳອິດ
14. ບໍ່ຍາກທາງ່າຍທີ່ສຸດ ເຮືອນນີ້ແນ່ນຂອງເຈົ້າບໍ່
15. ແນ່ນ ຂ້ອຍເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງ ແຕ່ຢູ່ຜູ້ດຽວ ກໍວ່າງພໍ ຂ້ອຍຢາກໃຫ້ຄົນເຈົ້າ ຄົນນີ້ຜູ້ໃດຜູ້ນຶ່ງຢາກເຈົ້າຢູ່

1. A : Ban⁵ chao:⁵ yu² sai:⁴?
2. B : Yu² gai:⁵ wa:t⁴ si⁴ tan⁴ neua⁴. Chao:⁵ hu⁵ cha:k³ tang¹ bpai:¹ boh⁴? Chak⁶
ni¹ bpai:¹ boh⁴ kai:¹.
3. A : Hu⁵ yu². Dtae² gi⁵ kohy⁶ kery³ sao² ban⁵ yu² taew⁴ na:n⁵.
4. B : Boh¹ Meua² dai:¹ mi³ we¹ la¹ ma³ ha⁴ kohy⁶ dae².
5. A : Kohp⁶ chai:¹. Kohy⁶ hu⁵ wa² mi³ lan⁵ kai⁴ ga¹ fe³ yu² kang⁴ wa:t² maen²
boh².
6. B : Maen² dtoh² bpai:¹ mi³ tang³ nohy⁵ se:n⁶ neu:ng² kao:⁶ bpai:¹ beuang⁵
kua⁴ han⁵ na:n⁵ Heuan³ ti² sohng⁴ beuang⁵ sai⁵ sohng⁴ sa:n⁵ maen²
heuan³ kohy⁵.
7. A : Keu³ si:² ha⁴ dai:⁵ wa:n³ sao:⁴ na⁶ si:² bpai:¹ ha⁴ chao:⁵ yu² ban⁵
wa:n sao: .
8. B : Sa:³ bai⁴ di¹ bpe:n¹ yang² dai:¹?
9. A : Sa:³ bai⁴ di¹ Kohy⁶ boh² mi³ wiak⁵ nya:ng⁴ meu⁵ ni². Bpai:¹ hong³ gan¹
goh¹ nai³ boh² yu² Seun³ na:ng² dta:ng² ni⁵ gi:n¹ na:m⁵ nya:ng⁴?
10. B : Na:m⁵ ye:n¹ seu² seu². Lin⁶ te:n³ nit² hiw⁴ na:m⁵ lai⁴.
11. A : Lin⁶ na:m³ pai:⁴?
12. B : Lin⁶ na:m³ ko:n³ fa:² la:ng². Ka:³ chao:⁵ ge:ng² lai⁴.
13. A : Ka:p³ lo:t² chao:⁵ ma³ ban⁵ kohy⁶ ha⁴ tang³ nyak⁵ boh²? Ma³ teua² ta:m³
i:t³.
14. B : Boh² nyak⁵ ha⁴ ngai² ti¹ su:t³ Heuan³ ni⁵ maen² kohng⁴ chao:⁵ boh².
15. A : Maen² Kohy⁶ bpe:n¹ chao:⁵ kohng⁴ dtae² yu² pu⁶ diaw¹. Gwang⁵ poh³ kohy⁶
yak⁴ hai:⁶ ko:n³ sao:² Ka:n³ mi³ pu⁶ dai:¹ pu⁶ neu:ng² yak⁶ sao:² yu².

LESSON 8: PAYING A VISIT

1. A: Where is your house?
2. B: It's near Wat Si Thane Neua. Do you know the way?
It's not far from here.
3. A: I know. Before I used to rent a house in that area.
4. B: Did you? Whenever you have times, do come to see me.
5. A: Thanks. I know there is a coffee shop beside the Wat, right?
6. B: Right. Next to that shop, there is one small lane, (you) enter (that lane) to right, and the second house on the left (with) two stories is my house.
7. A: I think I can find it. I'll go to see you at your house next Saturday.

(Saturday)
8. A: Hello , how are things?
9. B: Hi, I don't have anything to do today. I went to office and my boss wasn't there. Please sit in this chair. What will you have (drink)?
10. A: Just give me cold water. (I) play(ed) tennis. I'm very thirsty.
11. B: Who did you play with?
12. A: I played with some foreigners. They are very good.
13. B: Did you drive your car here? Was it difficult to find my house (you) coming the first time?
14. A: No, it's not difficult; its very easy to find. Is this house yours?
15. B: Yes, I'm the owner, but I'm living alone. It is wide enough. I want to rent it if someone wants to come and live as a tenant.

LESSON 9: THE DAILY ROUTINE

Substitution Exercise

ເຈົ້າ ລຸກຈັກໂນງທາເຊົ້າ

ລາວ
ເພິ່ນ
ຂະເຈົ້າ

ຂ້ອຍລຸກທ່າໂນງ ທາເຊົ້າ

ລາວລຸກທ່າໂນງເຊິ່ງ
ເພິ່ນລຸກກ່ອນທ່າໂນງ
ຂະເຈົ້າລຸກແຕ່ເດີກ

chao: ʃ lu:k² cha:k³ mong³
tu:k² tu:k² sao: ʃ

kohy ʃ lu:k² ha⁴ mong³ tu:k² tu:k² sao: ʃ

lao³
per:n²
ka:³ chao: ʃ

lao³ lu:k² ha⁴ mong³ ker:ng¹
per:n² lu:k² gohn² ho:k³ mong³
ka:³ chao: ʃ lu:k² dtae² der:k³

You get up, what time every morning?

I get up at 5 o'clock every morning.

He (gets)

He gets up at 5:30

He

He gets up before 6 o'clock

They

They get up only at dark

ຫຼັງຈາກ ລຸກແລວ ເຮັດຫຍັງ

ລ້າງໜ້າ ຕູ້ແຂວ
ກິນເຂົ້າແລວ

ລຸກແລວລ້າງໜ້າ ຕູ້ແຂວ

ຫຼັງຈາກນັ້ນກິນເຂົ້າເຊົ້າ
ຫຼັງຈາກນັ້ນໄປການ

la:ng⁴ chak⁴ lu:k² laew⁵ he:t² nya:ng³

lu:k² laew⁵ lang⁵ na⁴ tu⁴ kaew⁶

lang⁵ na⁴
tu⁴ kaew⁶
gi:n¹ kao:⁴
laew⁵

la:ng⁴ chak⁴ na:n⁵ gi:n¹ kao:⁴ sao: ʃ
la:ng⁴ chak⁴ na:n⁵ bpai:¹ gan¹

After getting up what do you do?

After getting up I wash my face and brush my teeth.

washing your face
and brushing your
teeth
eating

After that I eat breakfast.
After that I go to the
office.

ຈັກໂມງເຈົ້າ	ພາດັກນອຍໄປໂຮງຮຽນ
	ໄປການ ກັບນາກິນເຂົ້າຕອນທ່ຽງ ຈະໄປການອີກ ເຂົ້າອນ

ເຈັດໂມງສິບຫ້າ
ເຈັດໂມງສາມສິບ ສິບສອງໂມງເຈັດ ສອງໂມງເຈັດ ປະມານສິບໂມງທີສິບໂມງເຈັດ

cha:k ³ mong ³ chao: ⁵	pa ³ de:k ³ nohy ⁵ bpai: ¹ hong ³ hian ³	che:t ³ mong ³ si:p ³ ha ⁴
	bpai: ¹ gan ¹	che:t ³ mong ³ sam ⁴ si:p ³
	ga:p ³ ma ³ gi:n ¹ kao: ⁶ dtohn ¹ tiang ²	si:p ³ sohng ⁴ mong ³ ker:ng ²
	cha: ³ bpai: ¹ gan ¹ ik ⁴	sohng ⁴ mong ³ ker:ng ²
	kao: ⁶ nohn ³	bpa: ³ man ³ si:p ³ mong ³
		leu ⁴ si:p ³ mong ³ ker:ng ²

At what time (do you)	take the children to go to school?	7:15
	go to the office?	7:30
	return to eat lunch?	12:30
(will you)	go back to the office?	2:30
	fall asleep?	About 10:00 or 10:30

ຕອນເຊົ້າ	ເຈົ້າ	ຕ້ອງເຮັດຫຍັງ
	ພັນລະຍາ	
	ເດັກນອຍ	

ຂອບຕ້ອງກັບນ້ຳ
ລາວຕ້ອງສິ່ງເຂົ້າ
ເຂົ້າຕ້ອງຈຸຍແນ່ກວາດເຮັນ ຫຼືເຮັນ

dtohn ¹ sao: ⁵	chao: ⁵	dtohng ⁵ he:t ² nya:ng ⁵	kohy ⁶ dtohng ⁵ dta:k ³ na:m ⁵
	pa:n ³ la: ² nya ³		lao ³ dtohng ⁵ neung ⁶ kao: ⁶
	de:k ³ nohy ⁵		kao: ⁴ dtohng ⁵ sohy ³ mae ²
			qwat ⁴ heuan ³ tu ⁴ heuan ³

In the morning	you	have to do what?	I have to draw water.
	wife		She has to steam the rice.
	children		They have to help their mother dust the house and sweep it.

ຕອນແລງ	ເຂົ້າຕ້ອງ	ເຮັດຫຍັງ
	ຄືນເຂົ້າຊີ	
	ຄືນລາວຊີ	
	ຄືນພວກເຈົ້າ	

ເຂົ້າຕ້ອງຮຽນສິ່ງສິ
ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປຢາມພໍ່ນ້ອງ
ລາວຊິໄປເບິ່ງຊີເນ
ພວກຂ້ອຍຊິມັກຜ່ອນຢູ່ຢາມ

dtohn'laeng ³	kao: ⁴ dtohng ⁵	he:t ² nya:ng ⁴	kao: ⁴ dtohng ⁵ hian ³ na:ng ⁴ seu ⁴
	meu ⁵ ni ⁵ chao: ⁵ si: ²		kohy ⁴ bpai: ¹ yam ¹ pi ² nong ⁵
	meu ⁵ ni ⁵ lao ³ si: ²		lao ³ si: ² bpai: ¹ be:ng ² si ³ ne ³
	meu ⁵ ni ⁵ puak ⁵ chao: ⁵		puak ⁴ kohy ⁴ si: ² pa:k ² pohn ² yu ² ban ⁵

In the evening	they have	to do what?	They have to study.
	today you will		I will go meet my relatives.
	today he will		He will go see a movie.
	today you (pl.) will		We will hang around at home.

ໂມງ	ນຶ່ງເຝົ້ງ	ຊິໄປ
ສອງ	ໂມງ	ຊິມາ

ສາມ ສາ ສາ ເຈັດ ແປດ ເກົ້າ ສິບ ສິບເອັດ ສິບສອງ ຈັກ	mong ³	neu:ng ² ker:ng ²	si: ² bpai: ¹	(At)	1:30	I'll go.
	sohng ⁴	mong ³	si: ² ma ³	(At)	2	o'clock I'll come.
	sam ⁴				3	
	si ²				4	
	ha ⁴				5	
	ho:k ³				6	
	che:t ³				7	
	bpact ⁴				8	
	gao: ⁵				9	
	si:p ³				10	
	si:p ³ e:t ³				11	
	si:p ³ sohng ⁴				12	
cha:k ³				What		

ເຈົ້າ	ລູກ	ຈັກໂມງ	chao:5	lu:k 2	cha:k 3 mong 3
	ກິນເຂົ້າເຊົ້າ			gi:n 1 kao: 6 sao: 5	
	ໄປການ			bpai: 1 gan 1	
	ນາການ			ma 3 gan 1	
	ກິນເຂົ້າແລງ			gi:n 1 kao: 6 laeng 3	
	ເຂົ້ານອນ			kao: 6 nohn 3	
			You	get up	at what time?
				eat breakfast	
				go to the office	
				come to work	
				eat supper	
				fall asleep	

ຕອນແລງ	ເຈົ້າຢ່າງຍ	dtohn 1	laeng 3	chao: 5	yu 2	ban 5	boh 2
ເຊິ່ງ			sao: 5				
ຍາຍ			bai 2				
ທ່ຽງ			tiang 1				
		In	the evening				will you be at home?
			the morning				
			the afternoon				
			noontime				

ຂອຍ	ຕອງລູກທຳໂມງ	kohy 6	dtohng 5	lu:k 2	ho:k 3	mong 3		
ລາວ	ໄປການເຈັດໂມງເຊິ່ງ	lao 3	bpai: 1	gan 1	che:t 3	mong 3	ker:ng 2	
ເຈົ້າ	ພາເດັກນອຍໄປໂຮງຮຽນ	chao: 5	pa 3	de:k 3	nohy 5	bpai: 1	hong 3	hian 3
ຂະເຈົ້າ	ຮຽນທັງສີ	ka: 3	chao: 5	hian 3	na:ng 4	seu 4		
	ເຂົ້ານອນສືບໂມງ			kao: 6	nohn 3	si:p 3	mong 3	
	ຢ່າງຍ່າງທີ່			yam 1	pi 2	nohng 5	meu 5	ni 5
	ໄປຕລາດ			bpai: 1	dta: 3	lat 4		
	ເຮັດກິນ			he:t 2	gi:n 1			
		I	have to get up at 6:00.					
		He	go to the office at 7:30.					
		You	take the children to go to school					
		They	study.					
			fall asleep at 10:00.					
			meet relatives today.					
			go to market.					
			cook.					

ເຈົ້າຜາໝເຈົ້າ ໝ	ໄປໂຮງການ	ໄປ
	ໄປເບິ່ງຊີເນ	
	ໄປກິນກາຝ	
	ໄປຫານາຍຮຽນ	
	ນາກີ	
	ນາສາຂອຍ	
	ນາຫາໂມງ	
	ນາກິນເຂົ້ານຳກັນ	

chao: 5 pa 3 mu 2 chao: 5	bpai: 1 hong 3 gan 1	boh 2
	bpai: 1 beu:ng 2 si 3 ne 3	
	bpai: 1 gi:n 1 ga 1 fe 3	
	bpai: 1 ha 4 nai 3 ku 3	
	ma 3 ni 5	
	ma 3 ha 4 kohy 6	
	ma 3 ha 6 mohng 3	
	ma 3 gi:n 1 kao: 4	
	na:m 3 ga:n 1	

(Do) you bring your friend	to go to the office	?
	to go to see a movie	
	to go drink coffee	
	to find the teacher	
	to come here	
	to find me	
	to come at 5:00	
	to come eat together	

Vocabulary Exercise

9-1 ລຸກ

ລາວລຸກໄປນາແຕ່ເດີກ
ລຸກຂ້ອຍນັກລຸກສວຍ
ຕອນເຊົ້າຂ້ອຍລຸກແຕ່ທ່າໂມງ

lu:k²

lao³ lu:k² bpai:¹ na³ dtae² der:k³

luk⁵ kohy⁶ ma:k² lu:k³ suay⁴

dtohn¹ sao:⁵ kohy⁶ lu:k² dtae²
ha⁴ mong³

To get up, to wake up

He gets up early to go to the rice-field.

My children like to get up late.

I get up at five in the morning.

9-2 ພັນລະຍາ

ທ່ານມີມລາແລະພັນລະຍາ
ຂ້ອຍຮູ້ທ່ານບຸນທອງ ແຕ່ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້ພັນລະຍາ
ນີ້ແມ່ນພັນລະຍາຂອງຂ້ອຍ
ພັນລະຍາລາວກາລາວດີ

pa:n³ la:² nya³

tan² mi:n³ la³ lae:² pa:n³ la:² nya³

kohy⁶ hu⁵ cha:k³ tan² bu:n¹ tohng³
dtae² boh³ hu⁵ cha:k³ pa:n³ la:² nya³

ni⁵ maen² pa:n³ la:² nya³ kohng⁴ kohy⁶

pa:n³ la:² nya³ lao³ bpak⁶ lao³ di¹

Wife (formal)

Mr. Miller and his wife.

I know Mr. Bounthong, but I don't know his wife.

This is my wife.

His wife speaks good Lao.

9-3 ກ່ອນ

ຂ້ອຍຊືມາຫາເຈົ້າກ່ອນເຈັດໂມງ
ລາວນາດາຂ້ອຍກ່ອນແລ້ວ
ກ່ອນຊີ້ໄປ ຂ້ອຍຢາກເຈົ້າກັບລາວ
ຂ້ອຍຕູ້ແຂ້ວໝາແລງ ກ່ອນຊີ້ໄປນອນ

gohn²

kohy⁶ si:² ma³ ha⁴ chao:⁵ gohn² che:t³
mong³

lao³ ma³ ta⁶ kohy⁶ gohn² laew⁵

gohn² si:² bpai:¹ kohy⁶ yak⁶ wao:⁵
ga:p³ lao³

kohy⁶ tu⁴ kaew⁶ tu:k² tu:k² laeng³
gohn² si:² bpai:¹ nohn³

Before

I'll come to see you before 7 o'clock.

He came before and waited for me.

Before going I want to speak with him.

I brush my teeth every night before going to sleep.

9-4 ທຸກ

ທຸກຄົນຮູ້ຈັກ
ໄປຕລາດໝາເຊົ້າ

tu:k² tu:k²

tu:k² tu:k² ko:n³ goh¹ hu⁵ cha:k³

bpai:¹ dta:³ lat⁶ tu:k² tu:k² sao:⁵

Every

Everybody knows about it.

(I) go to market every morning.

ລາວອາບນ້ຳທຸກເລັງ
ທຸກບ່ອນມີວັດ

lao³ ap⁴ na:m⁵ tu:k² tu:k² laeng³
tu:k² tu:k² bohn² mi³ wa:t²

He takes a bath every evening.
Everyplace has a temple.

9-5 ຫຼັງ (ຈາກ)

ຫຼັງຈາກກິນເຂົ້າແລ້ວພັກຜ່ອນ
ຫຼັງຈາກເຮັດເງິນນຶ່ງແລ້ວ ເຮັດງ່າຍ
ລາວຊິດູແຂ້ວຫຼັງຈາກກິນເຂົ້າ
ຂ້ອຍໄປການຫຼັງຈາກມາເດັກນ້ອຍໄປໂຮງຮຽນ

la:ng² chak⁶
la:ng² chak⁶ gi:n¹ kao:⁴ laeng³ pa:k²
pohn²
la:ng² chak⁶ he:t³ teua³ neu:ng⁴
laew⁵ he:t³ ngai²
lao³ si:² tu² kaew⁴ la:ng² chak⁶
gi:n¹ kao:⁴
kohy⁴ bpai:¹ gan¹ la:ng² chak⁶
de:k³ nohy⁵ bpai:¹ hong³ hian³
lang⁵

After (... ing)
After eating dinner, we have
a rest.
After doing it once, it is easy
to do.
He brushes his teeth after meals.
I go to work after taking the
children to school.

9-6 ລ້າງ

ດຳວິນີ ລາວລ້າງໜ້າຢູ່ໃນຫ້ອງອາບນ້ຳ
ຫຼັງຈາກກັບມາແຕ່ນອກ ດ້ອງລ້າງໜ້າ
ມາຊ່ອຍລ້າງລົດເດ
ທຸກວັນອາທິດ ຂ້ອຍລ້າງລົດຢູ່ທາງໜ້າບ້ານ

diaw¹ ni⁵ lao³ lang⁵ na⁴ yu² nai:³
hchng⁶ ap⁴ na:m⁵
la:ng² chak⁶ ga:p³ ma³ dtae¹ nohk⁵
dtohng⁵ lang⁵ na⁴
ma³ sohy³ lang⁵ lo:t² dae²
tu:k² tu:k² wa:n³ a¹ ti:t² kohy⁴ lang⁵
lo:t² yu² tang³ na⁴ ban⁵

To wash
Now he is washing his face in
the bathroom.
After coming home from outside,
you must wash you face.
Come and help wash the car.
Every Sunday I wash my car in
front of my house.

9-7 ໜ້າ

ໜ້າລາວຄືໜ້າລາວທຸກ
ລາວທຸກໆ ໜ້າຄົນຢາກເວົ້າກັບລາວ

na⁴
na⁴ lao³ keu³ na⁴ poh⁵ lao³ lai⁴
lao³ na⁴ ngam³ tu:k² tu:k² ko:n³
yak⁴ wao:⁵ ga:p³ lao³

Face
His face is very much like his
father's face.
She is good looking. Everyone
wants to talk with her.

ທາລາວບໍ່ຄືນລາວເທ

ເຈົ້າເບິ່ງທ່າຂະເຈົ້າຈິ່ງຮູ້ຈັກວ່າແມ່ນໃຜ

na⁴ lao³ boh² keu³ ko:n³ lao³ tae⁵

His face doesn't look like a real Lao.

chao:⁵ ber:ng² na⁴ ka:³ chao:⁵
cheu:ng² hu⁵ cha:k³ wa² maen² pair⁴

You look at their faces, then you'll know who they are.

9-8

ຊ່ອຍ

ເຈົ້າຊ່ອຍພວກຂ້ອຍດີ ຂອບໃຈຫຼາຍ

ນ້ອງຊ່ອຍອາຍດັກນ້າ

ຂະເຈົ້າໄປຊ່ອຍພໍ່ນ້ອງເຮັດນາ

ຊ່ອຍຂ້ອຍຊັກເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງເດີ

sohy²

Help

chao:⁵ sohy² puak⁵ kohy⁶ di¹ di¹
kohp⁶ chai:¹ lai⁴

You helped us a lot. Thank you very much.

nchng² sohy² ay⁵ dta:k³ na:m⁵

Younger brother helps his elder brother to draw water.

ka:³ chao:⁵ bpai:¹ sohy² pi² nohng⁵
he:t² na³

They go to help their relatives to farm in the rice-field.

sohy² kohy⁶ sa:k³ keuang³ nu:ng² dae¹

Will you wash my clothes for me?

9-9

ສວນ

ສ່ວນຂ້ອຍເພີ່ນໄປເຮັດນາ

ສ່ວນອາຍຂ້ອຍອີກຜູ້ນຸ່ງນາ ລາວເຮັດວຽກຢູ່

ຕ່າງປະເທດ

ສ່ວນເມັງລາວບໍ່ຄົນຫຼາຍ

ສ່ວນຂ້ອຍ ໄປຕລາດເຮັດກິນ

suan²

For, as for

suan² poh³ kohy⁶ per:n² bpai:¹ he:t²
na³

As for my father, he went to work in the rice-field.

suan² ay⁵ kohy⁶ ik⁴ pu⁴ neu:ng² na:n⁵
lao² he:t² wiak⁵ yu² dtang²
bpa:² tet⁵

As for another elder brother, he is working abroad.

suan² meuang³ lao³ ni⁵ ko:n³ boh² lai⁴

As for the country of Laos, it doesn't have many people.

suan² kohy⁶ bpai:¹ dta:³ lat⁵ he:t²
gi:n¹

As for me, I'll go to market and (then) cook food.

9-10

ປິ່ນເຂົ້າເຂົ້າ

ເຈົ້າປິ່ນເຂົ້າເຂົ້າແລ້ວ

ຈັກໂມງປິ່ນເຂົ້າເຈົ້າທຸກມື້

bpai:n⁵ kao:⁶ sao:⁵

To have a breakfast (Lit. to grip a glutinous rice ball in the morning.)

chao:⁵ bpai:n⁵ kao:⁶ sao:⁵ laew⁵ boh²

Have you had breakfast?

cha:k³ mong³ bpai:n⁵ kao:⁶ sao:⁵ tu:k²
tu:k² meu⁵

At what time do you have breakfast every morning?

ຕອນເຊົ້ານີ້ລາວບໍ່ມີເວລາພັບເຂົ້າເຊົ້າ

dtohn' sao:⁵ meu⁵ ni⁵ lao² boh²
mi⁷ we⁷ la³ bpa:n⁵ kao:⁶ sao:⁶

This morning he did not have time
to eat breakfast.

9-11 ເພາະ (ວ່າ)

poh:² (wa²)

Because

ຂ້ອຍໄປຫຼິ້ນເທນນິສ ເພາະວ່າໄປຫາພູ່ບ້ານລາວ

kohy⁶ boh² bpai:¹ lin⁴ te:n³ nit⁴
poh:² wa⁴ bpai:¹ ha⁴ mu² yu²
ban⁵ lao³

I don't go to play tennis because
I'll go to see my friend at
his house.

ຂ້ອຍປັ້ນເຂົ້າເຊົ້າຫົກໂມງເຄິ່ງ ເພາະຕ້ອງມາ
ເດັກນ້ອຍໄປໂຮງຮຽນເຈັດໂມງ

kohy⁶ bpa:n⁵ kao:⁶ sao:⁵ ho:k³
mong³ ker:ng² poh:² dtohng⁵ pa³
de:k³ nohy⁵ bpai:¹ hong³ hian³
che:t³ mong³

I have my breakfast at six thirty
because I have to take children
to school at seven.

ມື້ນີ້ບໍ່ຕ້ອງຊື້ຂອງ ເພາະຍັງມີຂອງຢູ່.

meu⁵ ni⁵ boh² dtohng⁵ seu⁵ kohng⁴
poh:² nya:ng³ mi³ kohng⁴ yu²

Today we don't have to go shopping
because we still have some.

ລາວຢາກຮຽນພາສາລາວ ເພາະລາວຈະເຮັດວຽກ
ຢູ່ນີ້ສອງສາມປີ

lao³ yak⁶ hian³ pa³ sa⁴ lao³ poh:²
lao³ cha:³ he:t² wiak⁵ yu³ ni⁵
sohng⁴ sam⁴ bpi¹

He wants to learn Lao because
he'll work here for 2 or 3
years.

9-12 ຕ້ອງ

dtohng⁵

Must, have to, should (imperative)

ມື້ນີ້ຂ້ອຍຕ້ອງໄປຕາລາດ

meu⁵ ni⁵ kohy⁶ dtohng⁵ bpai:¹
dta:³ lat⁶

Today I have to go to market.

ຂະເຈົ້າຕ້ອງຮູ້ຈັກເຮືອງນີ້

ka:³ chao:⁵ dtohng⁵ hu⁵ cha:k³
leuang² ni⁵

They must know this story.

ຂ້ອຍຕ້ອງກິນຢາມື້ນີ້ສາມເທື່ອ

kohy⁶ tohng⁵ gi:n¹ ya¹ meu⁵
neu:ng² sam⁴ teua²

I must take medicine 3 times
a day.

ເດັກນ້ອຍຕ້ອງຮຽນຫຼັງສື

de:k³ nohy⁵ dtohng⁵ hian³ nang⁴
seu⁴

Children should study.

9-13 ເຈິ່ງ
 ດຽວນີ້ເວລາແປດໂມງເຈິ່ງ
 ສິຍສອງໂມງເຈິ່ງກັບບ້ານ
 ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຢາກເຮັດຫຼາຍ ເຮັດເຈິ່ງນຶ່ງ
 ເອົາເຈິ່ງນຶ່ງໃຫ້ລາວ ຈະ

ker:ng²
 diaw' ni⁵ we³ la³ bpaet⁴ mong³
 ker:ng²
 si:p³ sohng⁴ mong³ ker:ng² ga:p³
 ban⁵
 kohy⁶ boh² yak⁶ he:t² lai⁴ he:t²
 ker:ng² neu:ng³
 ao:¹ ker:ng² neu:ng¹ hai:⁶ lao³
 sa:²

Half
 Now the time is half past eight.
 We go home at twelve thirty.
 I don't want to do much. I'll do half of it.
 Give half to him.

9-14 ຕັ້ງແຕ່.....ຫາ.....
 ຕັ້ງແຕ່ນີ້ຫາວັນເສົາ
 ຂະເຈົ້າຂາຍຕັ້ງແຕ່ປະມານໜຶ່ງໂມງຫາສິບສອງໂມງ
 ຕອນເຊົ້າ
 ຂ້ອຍຢູ່ອະເມຣິກາ ຕັ້ງແຕ່ພັນເກົ້າຮ້ອຍໜຶ່ງສິບເອັດ
 ຫາໜຶ່ງສິບຫາ

dta:ng⁵ dtae².. ha⁵..
 dta:ng⁵ dtae² meu⁵ ni⁵ ha⁴ wa:n³
 sao:⁵
 ka:³ chao:⁵ kai⁴ dta:ng⁵ dtae² bpa:³
 man³ ho:k³ mong³ ha⁴ si:p³ sohng⁴
 mong³ dtohn¹ sao:⁵
 kohy⁶ yu² a¹ me³ li³ ga¹ dta:ng⁵
 dtae² pa:n³ gao:⁵ hohy⁵ ho:k³ si:p³
 e:t³ ha⁴ ho:k³ si:p³ ha⁴

From..... to....
 From today until Saturday.
 They're selling from about six o'clock to twelve o'clock in the morning.
 I was in the U.S. from 1961 until '65.

ຂະເຈົ້າເຮັດການຕັ້ງແຕ່ແປດໂມງເຈິ່ງຫາສິບສອງໂມງ

ka:³ chao:⁵ he:t² gan¹ dta:ng⁵ dtae²
 bpaet⁶ mong³ ha⁴ si:p³ sohng⁴
 mong³

They work from eight thirty to twelve.

9-15 ເຮັດກິນ
 ແມ່ເຮືອນເຮັດກິນ ຈັກເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງເບິ່ງເດັກນ້ອຍ
 ພັນລະຍາຂ້ອຍ ເຮັດກິນແຊບ
 ລາວມີຄົນໃຊ້ເຮັດກິນເກັ່ງ
 ລາງເທື່ອໜຶ່ງ ຈ່ອຍ ເມັງເຮັດກິນກິນ

he:t² gi:n¹
 mae² heuan³ he:t² gi:n¹ sa:k²
 keuang² nu:ng² beu:ng² de:k³ nohy⁵
 pa:n³ la:² nya³ kohy⁶ he:t² gi:n¹
 saep⁵
 lao³ mi³ ko:n³ sai:⁵ he:t² gi:n¹
 ge:ng²
 lang³ teua² pua⁴ sohy² mia³ he:t²
 gi:n¹ goh¹ mi²

To cook
 Housewives cook, wash clothes and take care of children.
 My wife cooks a delicious meal.
 He has a servant who is good at cooking.
 Sometimes there are husbands who help their wives cook meals.

9-16 ຊັກ

ແມ່ຊັກເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງຂອງໄດ້ກັ່ນອຍ

ເອົາສະບູໄປຊັກເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງ

ຢູ່ບ້ານຂະເຈົ້າ ຊັກເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງຫາວັນເສົາ

ເຄື່ອງແບບນີ້ ຊັກຍາກ

sa:k¹mae² sa:k² keuang² nu:ng² kohng⁴
de:k³ nohy⁵To wash (clothes)

Mother washes the children's clothes.

ao:¹ sa:² bu¹ bpai:¹ sa:k² keuang²
nu:ng²

Take the soap and wash the clothes.

yu¹ ban⁵ ka:³ chao:⁵ sa:k³ keuang²
nu:ng² tu:k² tu:k² wa:n³ sao:⁴

In their home they wash clothes every Saturday.

keuang² baep⁶ ni⁵ sa:k² nyak⁵

This kind of cloth is difficult to wash.

9-17 ບວກ

ພວດໄດ້ກັ່ນອຍ ເຂົ້າອອນແລວຍ້

ພວກເຈົ້າຕ້ອງເຮັດວຽກຕາມາຍເວົ້າ (ບອກ)

ຢູ່ຫ້ອງນັ້ນພວກນາຍຄູເຮັດການ

ພວກຄົນຕ່າງປະເທດມາຊ່ວຍເນື່ອງລາວ

puak⁵(Plural word stem)puak⁵ de:k³ nohy⁵ kao:⁶ nohn²
laew⁵ boh²

Have the children gone to sleep?

puak⁵ chao:⁵ dtohng⁵ he:t² wiak⁵
dtam¹ nai³ wao:⁵ (boh⁶)

You must do what your boss told you to do.

yu² hong⁴ na:n⁵ puak⁵ nai³ ku²
he:t² gan¹

The teachers work in that room.

puak⁵ ko:n³ dtang² bpa:³ tet⁵ ma:³
sohy² meuang³ lao³

Foreigners came to assist Laos.

9-18 ປະມານ

ແຕ່ນີ້ໄປຫມິປະມານຮອຍກິໂລ

ຢູ່ວຽງຈັນມີຄົນປະມານຮອຍຫ້າສິບພັນຄົນ

ລາວອາຍຸປະມານສີ່ສິບປີ

ຣີດັ້ມນີ້ ຂັບໄດ້ປະມານຫ້າປີ

bpa:³ man³About, approximatelydtae² ni⁵ bpai:¹ ha:n⁶ mi⁶ bpa:³
man³ hohy⁵ gi¹ lo³

It is about 100 kilometers from here to there.

yu² wiang³ cha:n¹ mi² ko:n³ bpa:³
man³ hohy⁵ ha⁶ si:p³ pa:n³ ko:n³

There are about 150,000 people in Vientiane.

lao³ a¹ nyu:² bpa:³ man³ si² si:p³
bpi¹

He is about forty years old.

lo:t² ka:n³ ni⁵ ka:p³ dai:⁵ bpa:³
man³ ha⁶ bpi¹

You can drive this car about five years.

9-19 ເດີກ

ເດີກເລັວ ເຮົາຕ້ອງກັບໄປນອນ

ເນື້ອໃດໄປເບິ່ງຊິເນ ນາເດີກຫຼາຍ

ພໍ່ຂ້ອຍຕື່ນແຕ່ເດີກ ໄປເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ນ້ຳ

ມື້ນີ້ເວລາຂ້ອຍຕື່ນຍັງເດີກຫຼາຍ

der:k³

der:k³ laew⁵ hao:³ dtohng⁵ ga:p³
bpai:¹ nohn³

meua² dai:¹ bpai:¹ beu:ng³ si³
ne³ ma³ der:k³ lai⁴

poh² kohy¹ dteun¹ dtae³ der:k³
bpai:¹ he:t² wiak⁵ yu³ na³

meu⁵ ni⁵ we³ la³ kohy¹ dteun¹
nya:ng³ der:k³ lai⁴

Dark hours (late in the evening or very early in the morning)

It's getting late. We have to go back to sleep.

When they go to see the movies, they come back late.

My father gets up very early and goes to work in the fields.

Today when I got up it was still very dark.

9-20 ເສ

ລາວວ່າລາວອີນາວັນເສົາ ຫຼືວັນອາທິດ

ເຈົ້າມາຕອນເຊົ້າຫຼືຕອນບ່າຍ

ເຈົ້າຢາກໄປທາງເສັ້ນນັ້ນ ຫຼືເສັ້ນນີ້

ຮາຄາຣິດແບບນີ້ ປະມານພັນຫ້າຫຼືພັນຫົກໂຕລາ

leu⁴

lao³ wa² lao³ si:² ma³ wa:n³ sao:⁴
leu⁴ wa:n³ a¹ ti:t²

chao:⁵ ma³ dtohn¹ sao:⁵ leu⁴
dtohn¹ bai²

chao:⁵ yak⁶ bpai:¹ tang³ se:n⁶
na:n⁵ leu⁴ se:n⁶ ni⁵

la³ ka³ lo:t² baep⁶ ni⁵ bpa:³ man³
pa:n³ ha⁶ leu⁴ pa:n³ ho:k³ do¹ la³

Or

He says he'll come on Saturday or Sunday.

Will you come in the morning or in the afternoon?

Do you want to go that way or this way?

The price of these cars is about one thousand five or six hundred dollars.

ບົດ ຮຽນ ທີ່ ເກົ່າ

1. ຕາມທັມມະດາ ຂ້ອຍລຸກຫົກໂມງທຸກາເຂົ້າ
2. ພັນລະຍາຂອງຂ້ອຍລຸກກ່ອນຫົກໂມງ
3. ເດັກນ້ອຍເຂົາລຸກສວຍ
4. ຫຼັງຈາກລຸກແລ້ວ ຫາກາຄົນກໍລ້າງໜ້າດູແຂ້ວ
5. ພັນລະຍາຂອງຂ້ອຍ ຫຼັງເຂົ້າ
6. ເດັກນ້ອຍຊ່ອຍແນ່ເຂົາກວາດເຮືອນ ດູ່ເຮືອນ
7. ສ່ວນຂ້ອຍໄປຕັກນ້ຳ
8. ເຈັດໂມງ ພວກຂ້ອຍປິ່ນເຂົ້າເຊົ້າເພາະຂ້ອຍຕ້ອງພາເດັກນ້ອຍໄປໂຮງຮຽນກ່ອນ
ເຈັດໂມງເລີຍແລ້ວຂ້ອຍກໍໄປການ
9. ຂ້ອຍເຮັດວຽກປະຈຳຢູ່ວຽງຈັນ ແຕ່ລາງເທື່ອຂ້ອຍຕ້ອງໄປເບິ່ງວຽກຢູ່ຕ່າງແຂວງ
10. ຕອນທ່ຽງຂ້ອຍກັບມາກິນເຂົ້າ
11. ຕອນຍ່າຍ ຂ້ອຍເຮັດການຕັ້ງແຕ່ສອງໂມງເລີຍຫາທ້າໂມງ
12. ພັນລະຍາຂ້ອຍເປັນແມ່ເຮືອນ ບໍ່ໄດ້ເຮັດການຢູ່ໃສ.
13. ລາວໄປຕລາດເຮັດກິນ ແຕ່ມີຄົນໃຊ້ຊັກເລື່ອງນຸ່ງໄຫ້
14. ຕອນແລງກິນເຂົ້າແລ້ວ ພວກເດັກນ້ອຍເຂົາຕ້ອງ ຮຽນໜັງສື ເນື້ອໃດບໍ່ໄດ້ໄປຢາມພີ່ນ້ອງ
15. ຂ້ອຍແລະພັນລະຍາໄປເບິ່ງພາບພະຍົນ ແຕ່ ຕາມທັມມະດາ ພວກຂ້ອຍພັກຜ່ອນຢູ່ເຮືອນແລະ
ເຂົ້ານອນປະນານສິບໂມງຫຼືສິບໂມງເລີຍເພາະຂ້ອຍຕ້ອງໄດ້ຕົ້ນແຕ່ເດິກ.

1. Dtam¹ ta:m³ ma:² da¹ kohy⁶ lu:k² ho:k³ mong³ tu:k² tu:k² sao:⁵.
2. Pa:n³ la:² nya³ kohng⁴ kohy⁶ lu:k² gohn² ho:k³ mong³.
3. De:k³ nohy⁵ kao:⁴ lu:k² suay⁴.
4. La:ng⁴ chak⁶ lu:k² laew⁵ tu:k² tu:k² ko:n³ goh¹ lang⁵ na⁶ tu⁴ kao⁶.
5. Pa:n³ la:² nya³ kohng⁴ kohy⁶ neung⁶ kao⁶.
6. De:k³ nohy⁵ sohy² mae² kao:⁴ gwat⁶ heuan³ tu⁴ heuan³.
7. Suan² kohy⁶ bpai:¹ dta:k³ na:m⁵.
8. Che:t³ mong³ puak⁵ kohy⁶ bpa:n⁵ kao:⁶ sao⁵. Poh:² kohy⁶ dtohng⁵ pa³ de:k³ nohy⁵ bpai:¹ hong² hian³ gohn² che:t³ mong³ kerng² laew⁵ kohy⁶ goh¹ bpai:¹ gan¹.
9. Kohy⁶ he:t² wiak⁵ bpa:³ cha:m¹ yu² wiang³ cha:n¹ dtae² lang³ teua² kohy⁶ dtohng⁵ bpai:¹ ber:ng² wiak⁵ yu² dtang² kwaeng⁴.
10. Dtohn¹ tiang² kohy⁶ ga:p³ ma² gi:n¹ kao:⁶.
11. Dtohn¹ bai² kohy⁶ he:t² gan¹ dta:ng⁵ dtae² sohng⁴ mong³ ker:ng² ha⁴ ha⁶ mong³.
12. Pa:n³ la:² nya³ kohy⁶ bpe:n¹ mae² heuan³. Boh² dai:⁵ he:t² gan¹ yu² sai:⁴.
13. Lao³ bpai:¹ dta:³ lat⁶ he:t² gi:n¹ dtae² mi³ ko:n³ sai:⁵ sa:k² keuang² nu:ng² hai:⁶.
14. Dtohn¹ laeng³ gi:n¹ kao:⁶ laew⁵ puak⁵ de:k³ nohy⁵ Kao:⁴ dtohng⁵ hian³ na:ng⁴ seu⁴ meua² dai:¹ boh² dai:⁵ bpai:¹ yam¹ pi² nohng⁵.
15. Kohy⁶ lae:² pa:n³ la:² nya³ bpai:¹ ber:ng³ pap⁵ pa² nyo:n³ dtae² dtam¹ ta:m³ ma:² da¹ puak⁵ kohy⁶ pa:k² pohn² yu² heuan³ lae:² kao⁶ nohn³ bpa:³ man³ si:p³ mong³ leu⁴ si:p³ mong³ ker:ng² Poh:² kohy⁶ dtohng⁵ dai:⁵ dteun² dtae² der:k³.

LESSON 9: THE DAILY ROUTINE

1. Usually I get up at six every morning.
2. My wife gets up before six.
3. The children, they get up late.
4. After having got up, everyone washes his face and brushes his teeth.
5. My wife steams rice.
6. The children help their mother to clean the house.
7. As for me, I go to get water.
8. At seven we have our breakfast because I have to take children to school before 7:30 and I too, go to work.
9. I usually work in Vientiane, but sometimes have to go to inspect works in the provinces.
10. At noon I come back to eat.
11. In the afternoon I work from 2:30 to 5:00.
12. My wife is a housewife and does not work elsewhere.
13. She goes to market and cooks, but we have a maid who washes clothes (for us).
14. In the evening after the meal, the children must study, if we don't go to visit relatives and friends.
15. Then my wife and I go to see a movie, but usually we rest at home and go to sleep at 10 o'clock or 10:30 because we have to wake up early.

LESSON 10: TOURING VIENTIANE

Substitution Exercise

ບອນນີເອັມວ່າ ເດີມຍົມ ວັດອົງຕີ ທາເດືອ ທາດຫຼວງ ນ້ຳຜູ່	ຫວັງ	bohn ² ni ⁵ ern ⁵ wa ¹	nya:ng ⁴
			dern ² nyo:n ³ wa:t ² o:ng ¹ dteu ⁵ ta ² deua ² tat ⁵ luang ⁴ na:m ⁵ pu: ²
		This place is called what?	
		an airport. Wat Ongtu. Tha Deua. That Luang. a fountain.	

ສຸດາມທຸດ ຄົມ	ໄທ	sa: ³ tan ⁴ tut ⁵	tai: ³
	ວຽດນາມ ຂເນນ ຝຣັ່ງ ອະເມຣິກາ ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ ອັງກິດ ຈີນ	ko:n ³	wiat ⁵ nam ³ ka: ³ men ³ fa: ³ la:ng ² a: ³ me ³ li ³ ga ¹ nyi ² bpu:n ² a:ng ¹ git ³ chin ¹
		Embassy	Thai
		Person	Vietnam Kampuchea foreigner American Japanese English Chinese

ກະຊວງ ໂຍທາ ສຶກສາ ຕ່າງປະເທດ ຜູ້ເລງຂ່າວ	ກັງ	ga: ³ suang ³	ka:ng ³
			nyo ³ ta ³ seu:k ³ sa ⁴ dtang ² bpa: ³ tet ⁵ ta: ³ laeng ³ kao ²
		Ministry of finance	
		public works education foreign affairs information	

ໂຮງການ	ໄປສະນີ
	ຕໍາຮວດ
	ກອງບັນຊາການ

hong ³ gan ¹	bpai: ¹ sa: ³ ni ³
	dta:m ¹ luat ⁵
	gohng ¹ ba:n ¹ sa ³ gan ¹

Office (of the)	Post office
	Police station
	Military headquarters

ນີ້ແນມ	ຕລາດເຊົ້າ
	ຕລາດແລງ
	ສະພາແຫ່ງຊາດ
	ໂຮງຫ້ວງຈັນ
	ໂຮງໝໍ ໂທສິດ
	ອະນຸສາວະຣີ
	ໂຮງແຮມລ້ານຊ້າງ
	ຖານີສາມແສນໂທ
	ຖານີເສດຖາທິຣາດ
	ຜະຣາຊວັງ
	ຖານີລ້ານຊ້າງ

ni ¹ maen ²	dta: ³ lat ⁴ sao: ⁵
	dta: ³ lat ⁴ laeng ³
	sa: ³ pa ³ haeng ² sat ⁵
	hong ³ moh ⁴ wiang ³ cha:n ¹
	hong ³ moh ⁴ ma ² ho ⁴ so:t ³
	a: ³ nu: ² sa ⁴ wa ² li ³
	hong ³ haem ³ lan ⁵ sang ⁵
	ta: ³ no:n ³ sam ⁴ saen ⁴ tai: ³
	ta: ³ no:n ³ set ⁴ ta ⁴ ti: ² lat ⁵
	pa: ² lat ⁵ sa: ² wa:ng ³
	ta: ³ no:n ³ lan ⁴ sang ⁵

This is	the morning market.
	the evening market.
	the National Assembly.
	Vientiane hospital.
	Mahosot hospital.
	the monument.
	the Lane Xang Hotel.
	Samsenthai street.
	the Royal Palace.
	Lane Xang Avenue

ເມື່ອໃດລາວກັບ	ໄປ	ວຽງຈັນ
	ມາ	ບາງ
	ເມື່ອງວ່າ	

meua ² dai: ¹ lao ³ ga:p ³	bpai: ¹	wiang ³ cha:n ¹
	ma ²	ban ⁵
		meuang ³ fa: ² la:ng ²

When will he	go back to	Vientiane?
	come back	home?
		France?

ເມົ້າໄດ້ໄປເບິ່ງຊີເນມາ ເຮົາ	ຢູ່ບ້ານ
	ກິນເຂົ້າບອງ ຢ້ານໝູເຮົາ ໄປຫາພີ່ນ້ອງ

meua ² dai: ¹ boh ² dai: ⁵ bpai: ¹ beung ² si: ³ ne ³ ma: ⁷ hao: ³	yu ² ban ⁵ gi:n ¹ kao: ⁶ nohk ⁵ yam ¹ mu ² hao: ³ bpai: ¹ ha ⁴ pi ² nohng ⁵
---	--

When we don't go to the cinema, we	stay at home. eat outside. meet our friends. visit relatives.
---------------------------------------	--

ຜາຍ	ຂອຍ	ຢ້ານພັກຜອມ
ລາວ		ມີລູກຢູ່ບ້ານ
ຂະເຈົ້າ		ຕ້ອງຈອຍເຂົ້າເຮັດລູກ
ຝື່ນ		ຢ້ານໄປ ກິນເຂົ້າຢູ່ບ້ານ ບໍ່ຮູ້ຈັກທາງໄປ ຕ້ອງເຮັດກິນ

poh: ²	kohy ⁶	yak ⁶ pa:k ² pohn ⁴
	lao ³	mi ³ wiak ⁵ yu ² ban ⁵
	ka: ³ chao: ⁵	dtohng ⁵ sohy ² kao: ⁴ he:t ² wiak ⁵
	per:n ²	boh ² yak ⁴ bpai: ¹ gi:n ¹ kao: ⁶ yu ² ban ⁵ boh ² hu ⁵ cha:k ³ tang ³ bpai: ¹ dtohng ⁵ he:t ² gi:n ¹
Father	mine	wants to rest.
	his	has work at home.
	their	must help them to work.
	their	doesn't want to go. eats at home. doesn't know the way to go. must prepare the food.

Vocabulary Exercise

10-1 ທ່ຽວ

ພາກັນອາທິດ ເຂົາໄປທ່ຽວຕະຫຼາດເຊົ້າ
ບໍ່ມີວຽກ ມາທ່ຽວຊື້ຊາ
ຂະເຈົ້າມັກຂັບຄີກໄປທ່ຽວບ້ານນອກ

tiaw²

tu:k² tu:k² wa:n¹ a'ti:t² hao:³
bpai:¹ tiaw² dta:³ lat⁶ sao:⁵
boh² mi¹ wiak,⁵ ma³ tiaw² seu² seu²
ka:³ chao:⁵ ma:k² ka:p³ lo:t² bpai:¹
tiaw² ban⁵ nohk⁵

To take a walk, to spend time
(to enjoy), to tour, to visit
for fun

We go to spend our time at
the Morning Market every Sunday.

I'm not on business, I just came
to enjoy myself.

They like to drive a car and
tour the country-side.

10-2 ເອີ້ນວ່າ

ພາສາລາວອັນນີ້ເອີ້ນວ່າຫ້ວງ
ພາສາລາວອັນນີ້ເອີ້ນວ່າທາດ
ບ່ອນນີ້ເອີ້ນວ່າຫ້ວງ
ວັດນັ້ນ ເອີ້ນວ່າວັດທາດຫຼວງ

ern⁵ wa²

pa³ sa⁴ lao³ a:n¹ ni⁵ ern⁵ wa²
nya:ng⁴
pa³ sa⁴ lao³ a:n¹ ni⁵ ern⁵ wa² tat⁵
bohn² ni⁵ ern⁵ wa² nya:ng⁴
wa:t¹ na:n⁵ ern⁵ wa² wa:t¹ tat⁵
luang⁴

To call, to name

What do you call it in Lao?

It is called a "That" in Lao.

What is the name of this place?

That wat is called "Wat That
Luang."

10-3 ລົງວ

ລົງວຂວາແດ
ລົງວຊ້າຍເຂົ້າເສັ້ນນັ້ນ
ລົງວຢູ່ນີ້ບໍ່ ທີ່ເສັ້ນຕໍ່ໄປ

liaw⁵

liaw⁵ kwa⁴ dae⁵
liaw⁵ sai⁵ kao:⁶ se:n⁴ na:n⁵
liaw⁵ yu² ni⁵ boh² leu⁴ se:n⁶
dtoh² bpai:¹

To turn

Turn to right, please.

Turn left and enter that road.

Do we turn here or go straight?

10-4 ກຳລັງ

ລູກສິດກຳລັງຮຽນພັງສີ
 ລາວກຳລັງຊັກເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງ
 ຂະເຈົ້າກຳລັງກໍ່ສ້າງໂຮງຮຽນ
 ແມ່ກຳລັງເຮັດກິນ

ga:m' la:ng³luk⁵ si:t³ ga:m' la:ng³ hian³ na:ng⁴
seu⁴lao³ ga:m' la:ng³ sa:k² keuang² nu:ng³ka:³ chao:⁵ ga:m' la:ng³ goh² sang⁶
hong³ hian²mae² ga:m' la:ng³ he:t² gi:n¹

To be (doing now (progressive
 tense form)

Students are learning (in class).

She is washing clothes now.

They are building a school.

Mother is cooking now.

10-5 ເຫັນ

ເຈົ້າເຫັນຕືກສູງນັ້ນບໍ່
 ຂອບ ເຫັນຄົນລາວຫຼາຍຄົນຢູ່ວັດ
 ລາວຢູ່ໃສ ລາວບໍ່ເຫັນ
 ຈາກນີ້ບໍ່ເຫັນຫາດຫຼວງ

he:n⁴chao:⁵ he:n⁴ dteu:k³ sung⁴ sung⁴ na:n⁵
boh²kohy⁶ he:n⁴ ko:n³ lao³ lai⁴ ko:n³
yu² wa:t²lao³ yu² sai:⁴ lao³ boh¹ he:n⁴
chak⁶ ni⁵ boh² he:n⁴ tat⁵ luang⁴

To see, to be seen or found

You see that tall building?

I saw many Lao people at the temple.

Where is he? He is not around here.

We can't see That Luang from here.

10-6 ຢຸດ

ຢຸດນີ້ແດ່
 ລາວຢຸດຄິດເພາະວ່າໄຟສີແດງແລ້ວ
 ລາວຢຸດຮຽນພັງສີ

yu:t³yu:t³ ni⁵ dae²lao³ yu:t³ lo:t² poh:² wa⁴ fai:³
si⁴ daeng¹ laew⁵lao³ yu:t³ hian³ na:ng⁴ seu⁴

To stop

Stop here!

He stops his car because the light has turned red.

He has stopped studying.

<p>10-7 <u>ສາກ່ອນ</u> ນັ່ງລົງສາກ່ອນ ກິນເຂົ້າສາກ່ອນ ແລ້ວໄປເບິ່ງ ເຮົາຊິໄປໂຮງໝໍສາກ່ອນ</p>	<p>sa⁴ gohn² na:ng² lo:ng² sa⁴ gohn² gi:n¹ kao:⁶ sa⁴ gohn² laew⁵ bpai:¹ beu:ng² hao:³ si:² bpai:¹ hong¹ moh⁴ sa⁴ gohn²</p>	<p><u>First, (of all), before</u> Please sit down first. Eat something first, then go out sightseeing. We'll go to the hospital first.</p>
<p>10-8 <u>ນ້ອຍນຶ່ງ</u> ມີແຕ່ນ້ອຍນຶ່ງບໍ່ຫຼາຍ ຕ້ານ້ອຍນຶ່ງຂອຍຊິເອີ້ນຂະເຈົ້າ ບໍ່ຮູ້ຈັກດີແຕ່ປາກົດນ້ອຍນຶ່ງ</p>	<p>nohy⁵ ne:ung² mi³ dtae² nohy⁵ neu:ng² boh² lai⁴ ta⁶ nohy⁵ ne:ung²; kohy⁴ si:² ern⁵ ka:² chao:⁵ boh² hu⁵ cha:k³ di¹ dtae¹ bpak⁶ dai:⁵ nohy⁵ neu:ng²</p>	<p><u>A little, a few, a moment</u> There are a few, not many. Wait a moment, I'll call them. (I) don't know it well, but (I) can speak a little.</p>
<p>10-9 <u>ສຳຄັນ</u> ເພິ່ນເປັນຄົນສຳຄັນ ອັນນີ້ສຳຄັນຫຼາຍ ຂ້ອຍຈຶ່ງຊິເວົ້າອີກເທື່ອນຶ່ງ ມີວຽກສຳຄັນຕ້ອງເຮັດເລວນາມນີ້</p>	<p>sa:m⁴ ka:n³ per:n² bpe:n¹ ko:n³ sa:m⁴ ka:n³ a:n¹ ni⁵ sa:m⁴ ka:n³ lai⁴ kohy⁶ cheu:ng² si:² wao:⁵ ik⁶ teua² ne:ung² repeat it again. mi³ wiak⁵ sa:m⁴ ka:n³ dtohng⁵ he:t² laew⁵ nai:³ meu⁵ ni⁵</p>	<p><u>Important</u> He is a V.I.P. This is very important I'll repeat it again. I have an important job which I have to finish today.</p>
<p>10-10 <u>ເວລາ</u> ເວລາເຈົ້າຢູ່ທ່ວງພະບາງ ໄປທ່ວງທາງແຄມ ນ້ຳຂອງບໍ່</p>	<p>we² la³ we² la³ chao:⁵ yu² luang⁴ pa:⁴ bang¹ bpai:¹ tiaw² tang³ kaem³ na:m⁵ kohng⁴ boh²</p>	<p><u>When, time</u> When you were in Luang Prabang, did you take a walk along the Mekong?</p>

ເວລາຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຢູ່ບ້ານ ມີຄົນມາຫາບໍ່

ເວລາລູກບໍ່ໄປໂຮງຮຽນ (ຂົນນັກລູກສອຍ

ເວລານິຍົມຢູ່ວັດ ມີຄົນຫຼາຍຄົນໄປ

we³ la³ kohy⁴ boh² yu² ban⁵ mi³
ko:n³ ma² ha⁴ boh²

we³ la³ luk⁵ boh² bpai:¹ hong³ hian³
kao:³ ma:k³ lu:k³ suay⁴

we³ la² mi³ bu:n¹ yu² wa:t² mi³
ko:n³ lai⁴ ko:n³ bpai:¹

pa:k²

lao³ pa:k² yu² hong³ haem³

meu⁵ ni⁵ kohy⁴ pa:k² boh² bpai:¹ gan¹

chao:⁵ pa:k² yu² sai:⁴ we³ la³ yu²
bpa:³ tet⁵ tai:³

lao³ boh² kery³ pa:k² ma:k² he:t²
wiak⁵ leuay⁵ leuay⁵

gi:n¹ liang⁵

ka:³ chao:⁵ gi:n¹ liang⁵ poh:² luk⁵
dtaeng² ngan³

kohy⁴ dtohng⁵ bpai:¹ gi:n¹ liang⁵
yu² ban⁵ mu²

dtohn¹ laeng³ meu⁵ ni⁵ boh² he:t¹
gi:n¹ poh:² bpai:¹ gi:n¹ liang⁵

When I was not home, did anyone
come to see me?

When the children do not go to
school, they often get up late
in the morning.

When they have a festival at the
temple, many people go.

To rest, to stay

He stays at a hotel.

Today I'm off duty. I don't
go to work.

Where did you stay when you
were in Thailand?

He never takes a holiday. He
is always fond of working.

To have a party

They have a party because their
child is to get married.

I must go to a party at a friend's
house.

We don't work this evening
because we will go to a
party.

10-11 ພັກ

ລາວພັກຢູ່ໂຮງແຮມ

ນີ້ມີຂ້ອຍພັກ ບໍ່ໄປການ

ເຈົ້າພັກຢູ່ໃສ ເວລາຢູ່ປະເທດໄທ

ລາວບໍ່ເຄີຍພັກ ມັກເຮັດວຽກເລື້ອຍໆ

10-12 ກິນລ້ຽງ

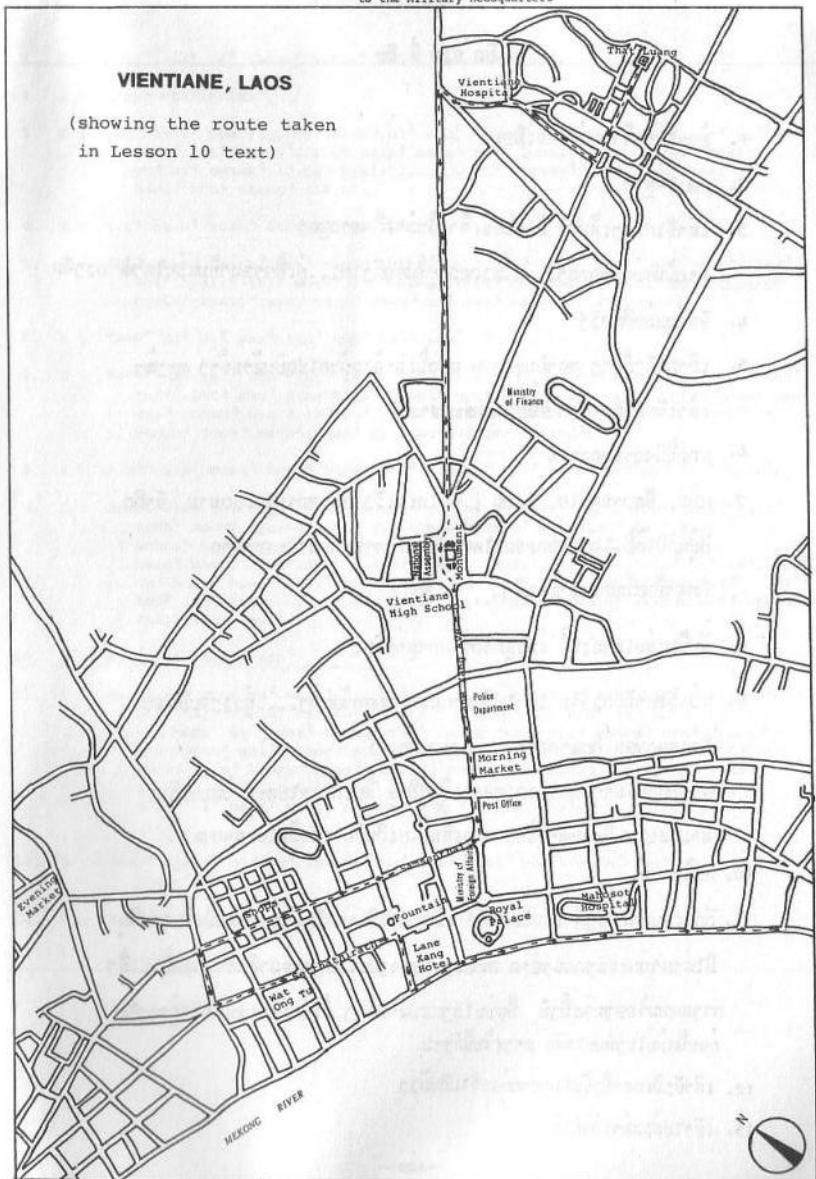
ຂະເຈົ້າກິນລ້ຽງເພາະລູກແຕງງາມ

ຂ້ອຍຕ້ອງໄປກິນລ້ຽງຢູ່ບ້ານ

ຕອນແລງນີ້ມີບໍ່ເຮັດຕືນເພາະໄປກິນລ້ຽງ

VIENTIANE, LAOS

(showing the route taken
in Lesson 10 text)



ບົດ ຮຽນ ທີ່ ສີບ

1. ຂ້ອຍຊົມາເຈົ້າໄປທ່ຽວໃນເນືອງ
2. ຂອບໃຈຫຼາຍ
3. ເຮົາຊົມທາງເສັ້ນນັ້ນ ບ່ອນນີ້ຂະເຈົ້າເອີ້ນວ່າເດີນທາດຫຼວງ
ທາດນັ້ນແນ່ນທາດຫຼວງ.....ລ້ຽວຂວາຍູ່ສີ່ເທື່ອກລົງໄປ... ຢູ່ເບື້ອງຂວາກັບແນ່ນໂຮງສີ່ ວຽງຈັນ
4. ອັນນັ້ນແນ່ນຕຶກຫຼັງ
5. ເຂົາກໍາລັງກໍ່ສ້າງ ກອງບັນຊາການ ດຽວນີ້ເຮົາລ້ຽວຈ້າຍໄປຜຸນລ້ານຈ້າງ ທາງທ້າ
ເຈົ້າເໜັ້ນ ຕຶກໃຫ້ຮຸ່ງ ອັນນັ້ນແນ່ນອະນຸສາວະຣີ
6. ແຊວນີ້ມີສຖານທຸດຫຼາຍນີ້
7. ແນ່ນ, ມີສຖານທຸດໂທ, ຂແນ່ນ, ອິນໂດເນເຊັຽ ແລະສຖານທຸດວຽດນາມ, ອັງກິດ
ຍີ່ປຸ່ນກໍມີໃກ້ນີ້ ໂຮງການກະຊວງໂຍທາຢູ່ຫຼ້ນ ເບື້ອງນີ້ແນ່ນສາມາແຫ່ງຊາດ
ຕຶກສູງນັ້ນແນ່ນກະຊວງການຄັງ.
8. ອັນນັ້ນແນ່ນໂຮງຮຽນບໍ່ ເໝີລຸກສິດອອກນາຫຼາຍຄົນ.
9. ແນ່ນວິທະຍາລັຍວຽງຈັນ ໂອໂຟສີແດງແລ້ວ ຢຸດຮ່ອນນ້ອຍນີ້ງ... ຢູ່ວຽງຈັນນິຕລາດ
ໃຫ້ສອງບ່ອນ ຕິຕລາດເຊົ້າ ແລະຕລາດແດງ
ອັນນັ້ນແນ່ນໂຮງການຕໍາຮອດ ຕລາດເຊົ້າຢູ່ນີ້ຫຼະ ທັນເດໂຮງໄປສະນີ ນີ້ແນ່ນຄຸນິນ
ສາມແຜນໂທ ມີຮ້ານຫຼາຍຮ້ານ ທາງເສັ້ນນີ້ໄປເດີນຍົນ ເສັ້ນນັ້ນໄປຕລາດແດງ.
10. ວັດນີ້ງ່າມນີ້.
11. ວັດນີ້ເອີ້ນວ່າວັດອົງຕີ້ ເປັນວັດສຳຄັນ ເພິ່ນເຮັດພິທີເວລາມີບຸນໃຫ້ ບ່ອນນີ້ເອີ້ນວ່ານັ້ນ
ມີໂຮງການກະຊວງຕຸແລງຂ້າວ ກະຊວງການຕ່າງປະເທດ ກະຊວງສຶກສາ ດຽວນີ້ໄປເບິ່ງ
ທາງແຄມນ້ຳຂອງນ້ອຍນີ້ງນັ້ນ ນີ້ແນ່ນໂຮງແຮມລ້ານຈ້າງ ຕໍ່ໄປແນ່ນພຣະຣາຊວັງຢູ່ວຽງຈັນ
ບ່ອນນີ້ແນ່ນໂຮງທົນະໂຫສິດ ທາງເສັ້ນນີ້ງ່າມ
12. ເຮົາຍັງມີເວລານີ້ງຊົ່ວໂມງປາຍກ່ອນຊົມກິນລ້ຽງ
13. ເຮົາໄປທ່ຽວທ່າເດື່ອກໍໄດ້.

1. C : Kohy⁶ si:² pa³ chao:⁵ bpai:¹ tiaw² nai:³ meuang³.
2. X : Kohp⁴ chai:¹ lai⁴.
3. C : Hao:³ si:² bpai:¹ tang³ se:n⁶ ni⁵ noh³. Bohn² ni⁵ ka:³ chao:⁵ ern⁵ wa² dern² tat⁵ luang⁴. Tat⁵ na:n⁵ maen² tat⁵ luang⁴ liaw⁵ kwa⁴ yu² si² nyaek⁵ lo:ng³ bpai:¹ yu² beuang⁵ kwa⁴ na:n⁵ maen² hong³ moh⁴ wiang³ cha:n¹.
4. X : A:n¹ na:n⁵ maen² dteu:k³ nya:ng⁴?
5. C : Kao⁴ ga:m¹ la:ng⁷ goh⁴ sang⁶ gohng¹ ba:n¹ sa³ gan¹. Diaw¹ ni⁵ hao:³ liaw⁵ sai⁵ bpai:¹ ta:³ no:n⁴ lan⁵ sang⁵ Tang³ na⁴ chao:⁵ he:n⁴ boh² dteu:k³ nya:² nyai:² a:n¹ na:n⁵ maen² a:³ nu:² sa⁴ wa:² li³.
6. X : Taew⁴ ni⁵ mi³ sa:³ tan⁴ tut⁵ lai⁴ noh³.?
7. C : Maen¹ Mi³ sa:³ tan⁴ tut⁵ tai:³ ka:³ men⁴ i:n¹ do¹ ne³ sia³ lae:² sa:³ tan⁴ tut⁵ wiat⁵ nam³ a:ng¹ gi:t³, nyi² bpu:n² goh¹ mi³ gai:⁵ ni⁵. Hong³ gan¹ ga:³ suang³ nyo³ ta³ yu² han⁶. Beuang⁵ ni⁵ maen² sa⁴ pa³ haeng² sat⁵. Dteuk³ sung⁴ na:n⁵ maen² ga:³ suang³ gan¹ ka:ng³.
8. X : A:n¹ na:n⁵ maen² hong³ hian³ boh²? He:n⁴ luk⁵ sit⁶ ohk⁶ ma³ lai⁴ ko:n³.
9. C : Mean⁴ wi:² ta:² nya³ lai:³ wiang³ cha:n¹ O¹ fai:³ si⁴ daeng¹ laew⁵ yu:¹ gohn² nohy⁵ neu:ng² yu² wiang³ cha:n¹ mi³ dta:³ lat⁶ nyai:² sohng⁴ bohn² keu³ dta:³ lat⁶ sao:⁵ lae:² dta:³ lat⁶ laeng³. A:n¹ na:n⁵ maen² hong³ gan¹ dta:m¹ luat⁵. Dta:³ lat⁶ sao:⁵ yu² ni⁵ la¹. Han⁶ de² hong³ bpai:¹ sa:³ ni³. Ni⁵ maen² ta:³ no:n⁴ sam⁴ saen⁴ tai:³. Mi³ lan⁵ lai⁴ lan⁵. Tang³ se:n⁶ ni⁵ bpai:¹ dern² nyo:n³ se:n⁶ na:n⁵ bpai:¹ dta:³ lat⁶ laeng³.
10. X : Wa:² ni⁵ ngam³ noh³.
11. C : Wa:t² ni⁵ ern⁵ wa² wa:t² o:ng¹ dteu⁵. Bpe:n¹ wa:t² sam⁴ kan³ per:n² he:t² pi:² ti³ we³ la³ mi³ bu:n¹ nyai:⁴. Bohn² ni⁵ ern⁵ wa² na:m⁵ pu:². Mi³ hong³ gan¹ ga:³ suang³ ta:³ laeng³ kao⁷ ga:³ suang³ gan¹ dtang² bpa:³ tet⁵ ga:³ suang³ seu:k³ sa⁴. Diaw¹ ni⁵ bpai:¹ berng² tang³ kaem³ na:m⁵ kohng⁴ nohy⁵ neu:ng² noh³. Ni⁵ maen² hong³ haem³ lan⁵ sang⁵. Dtoh² bpai:¹ maen² pa:² lat⁵ sa:² wa:ng³ yu² wiang³ cha:n¹. Bohn² ni⁵ maen² hong³ moh⁴ ma:² ho⁴ so:t³. Tang³ se:n⁶ ni⁵ goh¹ ngam².
12. X : Hao:³ nyang³ mi³ we³ la³ neu:ng² sua² mong³ bpai¹ gohn² si:² bpai:¹ gi:n¹ liang⁵.
13. C : Hao:³ bpai:¹ tiaw² ta² deua² goh¹ dai:⁵.

LESSON 10: TOURING VIENTIANE

1. C: I'll take you to tour the city.
2. X: Thank you very much.
3. C: We'll go on this road! This place, they call That Luang plaza. That stupa is That Luang... We'll turn right at crossroad to go downhill.... On the righthand side, that is Vientiane hospital.
4. X: What building is that?
5. C: They are now building offices for the Military Headquarters. Now we turn left to go Lane Xang Avenue. In front, do you see the big construction? That is the Monument.
6. X: There are many embassies in this area!
7. C: Yes. There are Thai, Kampuchea, Indonesian embassies and Vietnamese, British, Japanese embassies are also near here. The Ministry of Public Works offices are there. This side is the National Assembly. That high building is the Finance Ministry.
8. X: Is that a school? (I) see many students coming out.
9. C: Yes. Vientiane high school. Oh! The light has turned red. Let's stop a moment.... In Vientiane, there are two big markets: the Morning Market and the Evening Market. That is the Police Department. The Morning Market is here! Over there is the post office. This is Samsenthai Street. There are many shops. This road goes to the airport. That one leads to the Evening Market.
10. X: This Temple (Wat) is beautiful!
11. C: This Wat is called Wat Ong Tu. It is an important Wat. People hold celebrations when we have big festivals. This place is called the Fountain (place). There are the Ministries of Information, Foreign Affairs and Education. Now let's go to see the road along the Mekong for a while.

This is the Lane Xang Hotel. The next one is the Royal Palace in Vientiane. This place is Mahosot Hospital. This street is beautiful.
12. X: We still have more than one hour time before going to the party.
13. C: We can go to tour Tha Deua.

LESSON 11: CHATTING

Substitution Exercise

ຂອບໃຈຫຼາຍທີ່	ຜານາ	kohp ⁶ chai: ¹ lai ⁴ lai ⁴ ti ¹	pa ³ ma ³
	ຜາ ໄດ້ ຫນອຍ ນາ ນາ ຊອຍ ນາ ສອນ ທັງ ສີ ເຊິນ ເຮົາ ນີ້ ເຊິນ ເລກ ຂອຍ ສົງ ຂອຍ ນາ		pa ³ de:k ³ nohy ⁵ ma ³ ma ³ sohy ¹ ma ³ sohn ⁴ na:ng ⁴ seu ⁴ sern ³ hao: ³ meu ⁵ ni ⁵ sern ³ puak ⁵ kohy ⁶ so:ng ² kohy ⁶ ma ³
		Thank you very much for	taking me. taking the child. coming to teach. asking us today. asking us. sending for me.

ນີ້ ຂອບ ຕອງ ການ	ຜາ ກ ເລັ່ນ ແລະ ຫົວ ຜ້າ ທຽນ
	ຊິ້ນ ແລະ ພາກ ໂນ ເຄື່ອງ ເຮືອນ ຫຼາຍ ທ່າງ ຊິ້ນ ຫຸ້ນ ທາກີ ໂລ ນາ ອົບ ແລະ ສະບູ

meu ⁵ ni ⁵ kohy ⁶ dtohng ⁵ gan ¹	mak ⁶ le:n ² lae: ² hua ⁴ pa:k ³ tiam ³
	sin ⁵ lae: ² mak ⁶ mai: ⁵ keuang ² heuan ³ lai ⁴ yang ² sin ⁵ mu ⁴ ha ⁶ gi ¹ lo ³ na:m ⁵ o:p ³ lae: ² sa: ³ bu ¹

Today I want	tomatoes and garlic.
	meat and fruit.
	many kinds of appliances.
	pork 5 kilos.
	perfume and soap.

ຕອງການຫ້ວງເດໄພ້ອຈະ ເຈັດ	ຂອງກິນນົມ
	ນາ ກິນ ບຸນ

dtohng ⁵ gan ¹ nya:ng ⁴ dae ² peua ² cha: ² he:t ² kohng ⁴ gi:n ¹ na:n ⁵	na ³ gi:n ¹ bu:n ¹
--	---

What do you want in order to make	that food?
	a field?
	a meal?
	a festival?

ພາກຫຼ່ຽງ	ແນມ	ພາກໂງ່	ທີ່ຂອງໂມ້ຫຼາຍ
ບາສາລາວ		ມາສາ	
ຫຼວງພະບາງ		ບຸນ	
ນ້ຳຂອງ		ແນ່ນ້ຳ	
ເຮືອນແບບນີ້		ເຮືອນ	

mak ⁶ hu:ng ²	maen ²	mak ⁶ mai: ⁵	ti ² kohy ⁶ mark ² lai ⁴
pa ⁷ sa ⁴ lao ³		pa ⁷ sa ⁴	
luang ⁴ pa: ² bang ¹		bohn ²	
na:m ⁵ kohng ⁴		mae ² na:m ⁵	
heuan ³ baep ⁶ ni ⁵		heuan ³	

Papaya	is	the fruit	that I like a lot.
Lao		the language	
Luang Prabang		the place	
The Mekong		the river	
A house like this		the house	

Vocabulary Exercise

11-1 ຂຶ້ນ
ເຊີນຂຶ້ນມາເຮືອນດີ
ຂຶ້ນລົດຂອຍ ໄປໂຮງຮຽນນຳກັນ
ຮາຄາຂຶ້ນອີກ ຫ້າສິບກີບ
ດຽວນີ້ນ້ຳຂອງຂຶ້ນແລ້ວ ນິນ້ຳຫຼາຍ

keun⁴
sern³ keun⁴ ma³ heuan³ dti'
keun⁴ lo:t² kohy⁴ bpai:¹ hong³
hian³ na:m³ ga:n¹ noh³
la¹ ka³ keun⁴ ik⁴ ha⁴ si:p³ gip⁴
diaw¹ ni⁵ na:m⁵ kohng⁴ keun⁴
laew⁵ mi³ na:m⁵ lai⁴

(Go) up, (come) up, to get
in (a car)
Please come up to our house
(on stilts).
Get in my car; let's go to
school together.
The price is going up 50 kip
again.
Now the Mekong river water is
up; there is a lot of water.

11-2 ໄດ້ຍິນ
ເຈົ້າໄດ້ຍິນບໍ່ ຂອຍ ບໍ່ ໄດ້ຍິນ
ລາວໄດ້ຍິນຄົນເວົ້າກັມ ຢູ່ຂຶ້ນເທິງ
ຂອຍບໍ່ໄດ້ຍິນເຈົ້າເຂົ້າມາ ທ້ອງ
ຂອຍໄດ້ຍິນລົດຢຸດ ຢູ່ທາງໜ້າບ້ານຂອຍ

dai:⁵ nyi:n³
chao:⁵ dai:⁵ nyi:n³ boh² kohy⁶
boh² dai:⁵ nyi:n³
lao³ dai:⁵ nyi:n³ ko:n³ wao:⁵
ga:n¹ yu³ sa:n⁵ ter:ng²
kohy⁴ boh² dai:⁵ nyi:n³ chao:⁵
kao:⁴ ma³ hohng⁴
kohy⁴ dai:⁵ nyi:n³ lo:t² yu:⁵
yu⁵ tang³ na⁴ ban⁵ kohy⁴

To hear
Can you hear it? I don't
hear it.
He heard people talking
upstairs.
I didn't hear you coming into
the room.
I hear a car stopping in front
of my house.

11-3 ສົ່ງ
ທາງພີ່ນ້ອງໄປສົ່ງຜົວໄປການ
ຂອຍມາສົ່ງເດັກນອຍ
ລາວໄປຮັບເຄື່ອງທີ່ສົ່ງມາຈາກຕ່າງປະເທດ
ສົ່ງເຄື່ອງແບບນີ້ຢູ່ໂຮງໄປສະນີ ບໍ່ຍາກແລະບໍ່ແມ່ງ

so:ng²
tu:k² tu:k² meu⁵ mia⁵ bpai:¹
so:ng² pua⁴ bpai:¹ gan'
kohy⁴ ma³ so:ng² de:k³ nohy⁵
lao³ bpai:¹ ha:p² keuang² ti²
so:ng² ma³ chak⁴ dtang²
bpa:³ tet⁵
so:ng² keuang³ baep⁶ ni⁵ yu² hong³
bpai:¹ sa:³ ni³ boh² nyak⁵ lae:²
boh² paeng³

To send, to take (bring) a
person
The wife goes to take her hus-
band to work every day.
He went to get the things that
were sent from abroad.
You can send these things through
the post office without any
difficulty or having to pay
much money.

11-4 ຄິດ

ຍັງເວົ້າໄດ້ ຂອບກໍລັງຄິດ
ເຮືອງມີຄິດຍາກຫຼາຍ

ຂອບຄິດວ່າເຈົ້າຕອງການເງິນຫຼາຍພັນ

ki:t²

nya:ng³ wao:⁵ boh³ dai:⁵ kohy⁶
ga:m¹ la:ng³ ki:t²
leuang² ni⁵ ki:t² nyak⁵ lai⁶

kohy⁶ ki:t² wa:² chao:⁵ dtohng⁵
gan¹ nger:n³ lai⁶ pa:n²

To think

I still can't say anything about it. I'm thinking about it. It is very hard to think about this matter.

I thought you needed several thousand kip.

11-5 ຂອງ, ເຄື່ອງ

ເຈົ້າມັກກິນຂອງກິນຝຣັ່ງ

ເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງແບບລາວງາມ

ຂ້ອຍມາຢູ່ເມືອງລາວບໍ່ດົນ ຕອງຊື້ເຄື່ອງເຮືອນ

ຫຼາຍຢ່າງ

ລາວມັກກິນແຕ່ຂອງກິນຈີນ

kohng⁴, keuang²

chao:⁵ ma:k² gi:n¹ kohng⁴ gi:n¹
fa:³ la:ng² boh²

keuang² nu:ng² baep⁶ lao³ ngam³

kohy⁶ ma³ yu² meuang³ lao³ boh²
do:n¹ dtohng⁵ seu⁵ keuang²
heuan³ lai⁶ yang²

lao³ ma:k² gi:n¹ dtae² kohng⁴
gi:n¹ chin¹

Things (to eat) things (to wear)

Do you want to eat French food?

Laos clothes are beautiful.

I just arrived in Laos not long ago. I have to buy a lot of furniture.

He only likes Chinese food.

11-6 ຕອງການ

ລາວບໍ່ຕ້ອງການຫຍັງດອກ

ເຮົາຕ້ອງການຫຍັງແດ່ ເພື່ອຈະເດີນທາງໄປຕ່າງ

ປະເທດ

ຂະເຈົ້າຕ້ອງການເງິນເທົ່າໃດ ເພື່ອຈະກໍ່ສ້າງຕຶກ

ຊັ້ນສາມ

ຕົນມະຕາເຮົາຕ້ອງການຄິດເພື່ອເຮັດວຽກ

dtohng⁵ gan¹

lao³ boh² dtohng⁵ gan¹ nyang⁴
dohk⁶

hao:³ dtohng⁵ gan¹ nya:ng⁴ dae²
peua² cha:³ dern¹ tang³ bpai:¹
dtang² bpa:³ tet⁵

ka:³ chao:⁵ dtohng⁵ gan¹ nger:n³
tao:² dai:¹ peua² cha:³ goh²
sang⁶ dteu:k³ sa:n⁵ sam⁴

To need, to want

He doesn't want anything.

What do we need to travel to foreign countries?

How much money do they need to construct a 3-storey building?

ta:m³ ma:² da:¹ hao:³ dtohng⁵ gan¹ As a rule we need cars to do
lo:t² peua² he:t¹ wiak⁵ our job.

11-7 ເມື່ອ

ລາວໄປອະເມລິກາເມື່ອເຮັດໜັງ
ສູກສິດຄົນລາວຫຼາຍຄົນໄປພໍ່ຄົງເມື່ອຮຽນໜັງສື
ເຮົາໄດ້ຄິດຫຼາຍຢ່າງ ຫຼາຍເທື່ອເພື່ອຈະຫາທາງດີ
ລາວຂໍເງິນນຳພໍ່ເພື່ອຈະຈຸ່ມຄິດ

11-8 ສຳຮັບ

ວຽກເຮັດແລ້ວ ສຳຮັບນີ້
ສຳຮັບໂຮງການເຮົານີ້ ເຮົາຕ້ອງການອີກຄົນນຶ່ງ
ນາເຮັດວຽກນຳເຮົາ
ອັນນີ້ດີທີ່ສຸດສຳຮັບການສຶກສາ

peua²

lao³ bpai:¹ a:³ me³ li³ ga¹ peua² What does he go to America for?
he:t² nya:ng⁴
luk⁵ si:t² ko:n³ lao³ lai⁴ ko:n² Many students go to France for
bpai:¹ fa:³ la:ng² peua² hian³ study.
na:ng⁴ seu⁴
hao:³ dai:⁵ ki:t² lai⁴ yang² lai⁴ We considered many methods over
teua² peua² cha:³ ha⁴ tang³ di¹ and over again to find a good
lao³ koh⁴ nger:n³ na:m³ poh² peua² He asked his father for money
cha:³ seu⁵ lo:t² to buy a car.

For, (in order) to

sa:m⁴ la:p²

wiak⁵ he:t² laew⁵ sa:m⁴ la:p² meu⁵ The work is done for today.
ni⁵
sa:m⁴ la:p² hong³ gan¹ hao:² ni⁵ For our office we need one more
hao:³ dtohng⁵ gan¹ ik⁴ ko:n² man who will work with us.
neu:ng² ma³ he:t² wiak⁵ na:m³
hao:²
a:n¹ ni⁵ di¹ ti² su:t² sa:m⁴ la:p² This is the best for education.
gan¹ seu:k² sa⁴

For, as for

11-9 ພົບ

ຂ້ອຍ ເລີຍພົບ ເພິ່ນ ເທື່ອນຶ່ງແລ້ວ ເວລາທີ່ພົບລ້ຽງ
ຢູ່ສູນຄານທຸກໂທ
ຂ້ອຍ ຍິນດີທີ່ໄດ້ພົບ ທ່ານ
ຂ້ອຍພົບລາວຢູ່ທຸກບ່ອນ
ພົບກັນຢູ່ ເດີນຍົນນີ້

po:p²

kohy⁴ kery³ po:p² teua² neu:ng² I met him once when they had
laew⁵ we² la³ mi³ gin¹ liang⁵ a party at the Thai Embassy.
yu² sa:² tan⁴ tut⁵ tai:³
kohy⁴ nyi:n³ di¹ ti² dai:⁵ po:p² I am glad to meet you, sir.
tan²
kohy⁴ po:p² lao³ yu² tu:k² tu:k² I meet him everywhere.
bohn²
po:p² ga:n¹ yu² dern² nyo:n³ noh³ See you at the airport.

To meet

ບົດ ຮຽນ ທີ່ ສີ່ ເອັດ

1. ນາດານ : ເຈົ້າກໍຈະໄປຕລາດບໍ່
2. ນາງແພງ: ແນມແລ້ວຂອຍຈະໄປຕລາດ
3. ນາດານ : ເຊິນຂຶ້ນຮົດໄປນາມັກດີ້
4. ນາງແພງ: ຂອຍໃຈ ຂອຍໄດ້ບິນຮົດເຈົ້າອອກໄປເທື່ອນຶ່ງແລ້ວ ເຈົ້າໄປສັ່ງສາມີເຈົ້າໄປກາມບໍ່.
5. ນາດານ : ແນມແລ້ວ ນີ້ນີ້ເຈົ້າຈະເຮັດຫຍັງກິນ
6. ນາງແພງ: ຂອຍຈະຊື້ຊິນໝ້ອນ ເພາະນີ້ນີ້ຂອຍຄິດຢາກກິນສົມຊິນໝູ່
7. ນາດານ : ສົມໝູ່ແນ່ນຂອງກິນລາວທີ່ຂວຍນັກຫຼາຍ
ນີ້ນີ້ຂອຍຕ້ອງການເຄື່ອງເຮືອນເລັກໆ ນ້ອຍໆ
8. ນາງແພງ: ເຄື່ອງທີ່ເຈົ້າຕ້ອງການຢູ່ທາງນີ້ ຂອຍໃຈໝາຍໆທີ່ພາມາ ພິກັ້ນຢູ່ບ້ານນີ້
9. ນາດານ : ບໍ່ເປັນຫຍັງ

BO:T³ HIAN³ TI² SI:P³ E:T³

1. Ma³ dam¹ x : Chao:⁵ goh¹ cha:³ bpai:¹ dta:³ lat⁶ boh² ?
2. Nang³ Paeng³: Maen² laew⁵. Kohy⁶ cha:³ bpai:¹ dta:³ lat⁶.
3. Ma³ dam¹ x : Sern³ keun⁶ lo:t² bpai:¹ nam³ ga:n¹ dti⁵.
4. Nang³ Paeng³: Kohp⁶ chai:¹. Kohy⁶ dai:⁵ nyi:n³ lo:t² chao:⁵ ohk⁶ bpai:¹ teua²
neu:ng² laew⁵ Chao:⁵ bpai:¹ so:ng² sa⁴ mi³ chao:⁵ bpai:¹
gan¹ boh²?
5. Ma³ dam¹ x : Maen² laew⁵. Meu⁵ ni¹ chao:⁵ cha:³ he:t² nya:ng⁴ gi:n¹?
6. Nang³ Paeng³: Kohy⁶ cha:³ seu⁵ sin⁵ mu⁴ gohn² poh:² meu⁵ ni⁵ kohy⁶ ki:t² yak⁶
gi:n¹ so:m⁶ sin⁵ mu⁴.
7. Ma³ dam¹ x : So:m⁶ mu⁴ maen² kohng⁴ gi:n¹ lao³ ti² kohy⁶ mak² lai⁴.
Meu⁵ ni¹ kohy⁶ dtohng⁵ gan¹ keuang² heuan³ le:k² le:k²
nohy⁵ nohy⁵.
8. Nang³ Paeng³: Keuang² ti² chao:⁵ dtohng⁵ gan¹ yu² tang³ ni⁵. Kohp⁶ chai:¹
lai⁴ lai⁴ ti² pa³ ma² Po:p² gain¹ yu² ban⁵ noh³.
9. Ma³ dam¹ x : Boh² bpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴.

LESSON 11: CHATTING

1. Madame X: Will you go to market, too?
2. Nang Pheng: Yes, I'm going to market.
3. Madame X: Please get in the car, let's go together!
4. Nang Pheng: Thank you. I heard your car going out once.
Did you take your husband to go to work?
5. Madame X: Yes. Today what are you cooking?
6. Nang Pheng: I'll buy pork first because today I want to eat
sausage.
7. Madame X: Pork sausage is a Lao food that I like a lot.
8. Nang Pheng: The things you want are here. Thank you for
taking (me) here. See you at home!
9. Madame X: You're welcome.

LESSON 12: LAO CLASS (A letter)

Substitution Exercise

ເຈົ້າຮຽນລາວ ຢູ່ໃສ
ຈັກມີໃນອາທິດນັ້ນ
ນັ້ນໆຈັກຊົ່ວໂມງ
ເຈົ້າຮຽນບົດຮຽນທີ່ເທົ່າໃດນີ້
ເຈົ້າຮຽນລາວນຳໃຜ
ເຈົ້າຮຽນຫຍັງໃນບົດຮຽນນີ້

ຂ້ອຍຮຽນຢູ່ຫ່າງຮຽນ
ໃນອາທິດນັ້ນຈັກ
ຮຽນນັ້ນໆທາລິຍນາທີ

ຂໍ້ນີ້ຮຽນບົດຮຽນທີ່ຊາວ
ຮຽນນຳນາຍຄຣ໌ທີ່ສອນດີ
ໃນບົດຮຽນນີ້ ຂ້ອຍຮຽນວັນທີ່ແລະນີ້ໃນອາທິດ

chao: 5 hian 3 lao 3	yu 2 sai: 4
cha:k 3 me: 5 nai: 3 a 1 ti: 2	neu:ng 2
me: 5 neu:ng 2 cha:k 3 sua 2	mcng 3

kohy 6 hian 3 yu 2 hong 3 hian 3
nai: 3 a 1 ti: 2 neu:ng 2 ha 6 me: 5
hian 3 me: 5 neu:ng 2 ha 6 si: p 3
na 3 ti 3

chao: 5 hian 3 bo: t 3 hian 3 ti 2 tao: 2 dai: 1
me: 5 ni 5
chao: 5 hian 3 lao 3 na: m 3 pai: 4
chao: 5 hian 3 nya: ng 4 nai: 3 bo: t 3 hian 3 ni 5

me: 5 ni 5 hian 3 bo: t 3 hian 3 ti 2
sao 3
hian 3 na: m 3 nai 3 ku 3 ti 2 sohn 4
di 1 di 1
nai: 3 bo: t 3 hian 3 ni 3 kohy 6 hian 3
wa: n 3 ti 2 lae: 2 me: 5 nai: 3
a 1 ti: 2

You study Lao	where?	I study at the school.
	how many days/week?	Five days per week.
	how many hours/day?	Fifty minutes per day.
You study the lesson which number today?		Today I studied lesson 20.
You study Lao with who?		I studied with the teacher who teaches very well.
What are you studying in this lesson?		In this lesson I study about dates and the days of the week.

ນາຍຄຣູດາມ	ຢ່າງໃດ
ລູກສິດຕອບ ເພິ່ນສອນຕົວໜັງສືລາວ ວິທີສອນຂອງເພິ່ນເປັນ ລູກສິດຮຽນ	

ເພິ່ນຖາມວ່ານີ້ແນ່ນວັນໜັງ
ລາວຕອບວ່າແນ່ນວັນຈັນ
ຂຽນໃສ່ພື້ນຂຽນຕາມນາຍຄຣູດາມ ວິທີຂອງເພິ່ນດີກວ່າໝູ່ ຂະເຈົ້າຕ່ຽງໃຈຮຽນນຳນາຍຄຣູດາມ

nai ³ ku ³ tam ⁴	yang ² dai: ¹
luk ⁵ si:t ³ dtohp ⁶	
per:n ² sohn ⁴ dtua ¹ na:ng ⁴ seu ⁴ lao ³	
wi: ² ti ³ sohn ⁴ kohng ⁴ per:n ² bpe:n ¹	
luk ⁵ si:t ³ hian ³	

per:n ² tam ⁴ wa ² meu ⁵ ni ⁵ maen ² wa:n ³ nya:ng ⁴
lao ³ dtohp ⁶ wa ² maen ² wa:n ³ cha:n ¹
kian ⁴ sai: ² bpeu:m ⁵ kian ⁴ dtam ¹ nai ³ ku ³ wao: ⁵
wi: ² ti ³ kohng ⁴ per:n ² di ¹ gwa ² mu ²
ka: ³ chao: ⁵ dta:ng ⁵ chai: ¹ hian ³ na:m ³ nai ³ ku ³

The teacher asks
The student answers
He teaches the Lao alphabet
His teaching method is
The student studies

how?
He asked, what day is it today.
He answered that it's Monday.
(By) writing in the notebook as the teacher speaks.
His method is better than (my) friend's.
They are eager to study with the teacher

ວັນ	ແນ່	ວັນອາທິດ	ວັນທີ່	ຊາວ
ວັນຈັນ				ຊາວເອັດ
ວັນອັງຄານ				ຊາວສອງ
ວັນພຸດ				ຊາວສາມ
ວັນພະຫັດ				ຊາວສີ່
ວັນສຸກ				ຊາວຫ້າ
ວັນເສົາ				ຊາວໜ້າ

meu ⁵ ni ⁵	maen ²	wa:n ³ a ¹ ti:t ⁴	wa:n ³ ti ⁴	sao ³
meu ⁵ wa:n ³ ni ⁵		wa:n ³ cha:n ¹		sao ³ e:t ³
meu ⁵ eun ²		wa:n ³ a:ng ¹ kan ³		sao ³ sohng ⁴
		wa:n ³ pu:t ²		sao ³ sam ⁴
		wa:n ³ pa: ² ha:t ³		sao ³ si ²
		wa:n ³ su:k ³		sao ³ ha ⁴
		wa:n ³ sao: ⁴		sao ³ ho:k ³

Today	is	Sunday	the 20th.
Yesterday		Monday	the 21st.
Tomorrow		Tuesday	the 22nd.
		Wednesday	the 23rd.
		Thursday	the 24th.
		Friday	the 25th.
		Saturday	the 26th.

ດວງນິທິໂມງ	ໂທນາທິ
------------	--------

ເຈັດໂມງ	ຍັງສິບນາທີ
---------	------------

diaw' ni' ho:k' mong ³	ha' na' ti'
-----------------------------------	-------------

che:t' mong ³	nya:ng' si:p ³
--------------------------	---------------------------

Now it's 6 o'clock	(plus) 5 minutes.
--------------------	-------------------

7 o'clock	less 10.
-----------	----------

ຂອບຢາກໃຫ້	ເຈົ້າ	ນາມສາມໂມງ
	ລາວ	ອ່ານປັດຮຽນທີ່ຊາວ
	ຂະເຈົ້າ	ຂຽນຕົວໜັງສືລາວໃສ່ກະດານດຳ
		ຕັ້ງໃຈເຮັດວຽກ
		ຊ່ອຍກວດເຮືອນ
		ຊ່ອຍເຮັດນາ
		ຜາໂປວງງຸ້ມ

kohy' yak' hai:'	chao:'	ma' ni' sam' mong ³
	lao ³	an ² bo:t' hian ³ ti' sao ³
	ka:' chao:'	kian' dtua' na:ng' seu' lao ³ sai: ² ga: ³ dan' da:m' ¹
		dtā:ng' chai:' he:t ² wiak ⁵
		sohy ² gwat' heuan ³
		sohy ² he:t ² na ³
		pā ³ bpai:' wiang ³ cha:n'

I want for	you	to come here at 3 o'clock.
	him	to read lesson 20.
	them	to write Lao letters on the blackboard.
		to be eager to work.
		to help sweep the house.
		to help work the fields.
		to take (him) to go to Vientiane.

Vocabulary Exercise

12-1 ພຽງແຕ່

ຂ້ອຍຈຶ່ງພັດຢູ່ພຽງແຕ່ສາມມື້
ຢູ່ບ້ານເອົາມີຄົນພຽງແຕ່ສອງຄົນ
ໂຮງຮຽນນັ້ນນ້ອຍມີນາຍຄຸນພຽງແຕ່ສີ່ຄົນ
ໄປນຳແຕ່ຫຼືບໍ່ແພງ ເຂົາເອົາພຽງແຕ່ຫາສິນກິບ

piang³ dtae²

kohy¹ si:² pa:k² yu:² ha:n⁴ piang³
dtae² sam⁴ meu⁵
yu:² ban⁵ hao:³ mi:³ ko:n³ piang³
dtae² sohng⁴ ko:n³
hong³ hian³ na:n⁵ nohy⁵ mi:³ nai³
ku³ piang³ dtae² si:² ko:n³
bpai:¹ na:m³ tae:k⁵ si:³ boh²
paeng⁷ kao:⁵ ao:¹ piang³ dtae² ha⁴
si:p³ gip⁶
mo:t³ tu:k¹

Only

I will stay there only three days.
In our house, there are only two of us.
The school is small; there are only four teachers.
Going by taxi is not expensive; they charge only 50 kip.

12-2 ທົດທຸກ

ດຽວນີ້ທົດທຸກບ່ອນຢູ່ໃນເມືອງຂາຍນັ້ນຂຽນ
ລູກສົດທົດທຸກຄົນອ່ານເວັ້ນໜັງສືລາວໄດ້
ຢູ່ຕະຫຼາດເຊົ້າວຽງຈັນມີເຄື່ອງທົດທຸກຢ່າງ
ຂ້ອຍນັກພາກໃນທົດທຸກແນວ

diaw¹ ni⁵ mo:t³ tu:k¹ bohn⁴ yu:¹ nai³
meuang³ kai⁴ bpeu:m⁵ kian⁴
luk⁵ si:t³ mo:t³ tu:k¹ ko:n³ an¹
dtua¹ na:ng⁴ seu⁴ lao³ dai:⁵
yu:¹ dta:⁷ lat⁶ sao:⁵ wiang³ cha:n¹
mi:³ keuang² mo:t³ tu:k¹ yang²

Every

Now every place in town sells notebooks.
Every student can read Lao characters.
Everything can be found in Vientiane's morning market.
I like all kinds of fruits.

12-3 ວິທີ

ເຮົາຮຽນວິທີອ່ານແລະຂຽນຢູ່ໂຮງຮຽນ
ວິທີອ່ານພາສາລາວບໍ່ຍາກ
ເພິ່ນໄປຕ່າງປະເທດເພື່ອຮຽນວິທີສອນໜັງສື
ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້ຈັກວິທີເຮັດບໍ່ໄດ້

wi:² ti:³

How to do, method

hao:³ hian³ wi:² ti:³ an¹ lae:² kian⁴ We learn how to read and write
yu:² hong³ hian³ in school.
wi:² ti:³ an¹ pa:³ sa⁴ lao³ boh² nyak⁵ Reading Lao is not difficult.
per:n² bpai:¹ dtang⁷ bpa:³ tet⁵ She (he) goes abroad to learn
peua¹ hian³ wi:² ti:³ sohn⁴ na:ng⁴ teaching methods.
kohy¹ boh² hu:⁵ cha:k³ wi:² ti:³ he:t² I don't know why I can't do
boh² dai:⁵ it.

12-4

ກວ່າ

ອັນນີ້ໃຫຍ່ກວ່າອັນນັ້ນ

ຕືກນີ້ສູງກວ່າຕືກນັ້ນ ແຕ່ຕືກນັ້ນງາມກວ່າ

ສຳລັບຂ້ອຍພາສາລາວງ່າຍກວ່າພາສາຈີນ

ມື້ນີ້ເຢັນກວ່າມື້ວານນີ້

gwa²

an' ni⁵ nyai:³ gwa² a:n' na:n⁵

dteu:k³ ni⁵ sung⁴ gwa² dteu:k³ na:n⁵
dtae² dteu:k³ na:n⁵ ngam³ gwa²

sa:m⁴ la:p¹ kohy⁶ pa³ sa⁴ lao³ ngai²
gwa² pa³ sa⁴ chin¹

meu⁵ ni⁵ ye:n¹ gwa² meu⁵ wan³ ni⁵

More.... than...

This one is bigger than that one.

This building is taller than that building, but that one is more beautiful.

For me Lao is easier than Chinese.

Today is cooler than yesterday.

12-5

ທີ່

ປີນີ້ແມ່ນປີທີ່ສອງ

ເທື່ອທີ່ມື້ງລາວໄປປະເທດໄທ ເທື່ອທີ່ສອງໄປເມືອງວິຣົງ

ຫ້ອງການຂອງຍູ່ຢູ່ຊັ້ນທີສີ່

ວັນທີ່ມື້ງແມ່ນວັນພະຫັດ

ti²

bpi' ni⁵ maen² bpi' ti² sohng⁴

teua² ti² neu:ng² lao³ bpai:¹ bpa:³
tet⁵ tai:³ teua² ti² sohng⁴ bpai:¹
meuang³ fa:³ la:ng²

hohng⁶ gan¹ kohy⁶ yu² sa:n⁵ ti² si¹

wa:n³ ti² neu:ng² maen² wa:n³ pa:²
ha:t³

-th (for cardinal numbers)

This year is the second year.

The first time he went to Thailand; the second time he went to France.

My office is on the fourth floor.

The first day is Thursday.

138

12-6

ກ່ຽວ

ຂ້ອຍອ່ານເລື່ອງກ່ຽວກັບເມືອງລາວ

ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ກ່ຽວກັບອັນນັ້ນ

ເຈົ້າບໍ່ກ່ຽວກັບມັນ

giaw²

kohy⁶ an¹ leuang² giaw² ga:p³ meuang³
lao³

kohy⁶ boh² giaw² ga:p³ a:n' na:n⁵

chao:⁵ boh² giaw² goh¹ dai:⁵

About, concerning, to have something to do with

I read (a story) about Laos.

I do not have anything to do with it.

You can stay away from it.

12-7

ໃຫ້

ລາວໃຫ້ເຈົ້າຂັບຮົດລາວບໍ່

ນາຍໝໍໃຫ້ລາວກິນເຂົ້າສອງມື້

ຂະເຈົ້າຍັງບໍ່ໃຫ້ຄົນເຂົ້າ

ແມ່ໃຫ້ລູກໄປຊື້ຂອງ

ນາຍລາວໃຫ້ລາວນັກອາທິດນຶ່ງ

12-8

ໃສ່

(See also p.155/6.5)

ຂຽນຊື່ເຈົ້າໃສ່ກະດານ

ລາວຂຽນໃສ່ປຶ້ມນ້ອຍ ເວລາພົບກັບໝູ່

ເອົານ້ຳໃສ່ແກ້ວສາກ່ອນ

ເອົາອັນນີ້ໃສ່ຮົດແດ່

12-9

ໄວ

ມາໄວລຸ ບໍ່ມີເວລາຫຼາຍ

ເຮົາຕ້ອງໄປໄວ່າ

ເຈົ້າຂັບຮົດໄວພໍ

ລາວເວົ້າໄວຂອງບໍ່ເຂົ້າໃຈ

ໄຫ້lao³ hai:⁴ chao:⁵ ka:p³ lo:t² lao³boh²
nai:² moh⁴ boh² hai:⁶ lao³ gi:n¹ kao:⁶
sohng⁴ meu⁵ka:³ chao:⁵ nya:ng³ boh² hai:⁶ ko:n³
kao:⁶mae:² hai:⁶ luk⁵ bpai:¹ seu⁵ kohng⁴nai:² lao³ hai:⁶ lao³ pa:k² a'ti:t²
neu:ng²ໄສ້kian⁴ seu² chao:⁵ sai:² ga:³ dan¹lao³ kian⁴ sai:² bpeu:m⁵ nohy⁵ we²
la:³ po:p² ga:p³ mu²ao:¹ na:m⁵ sai:² gaew⁵ sa⁴ gohn²ao:¹ a:n¹ ni⁵ sai:² lo:t² dae²ໄວ້ma:³ wai:³ du:³ boh² mi:³ we:³ la:³ lai⁴hao:³ dtohng⁵ bpai:¹ wai:³ wai:³chao:⁵ ka:p³ lo:t² wai:³ poh³lao³ wao:⁵ wai:³ kohy⁴ boh² kao:⁶
chai:¹To have (allow) someone do ..

Does he let you drive his car?

The doctor won't let him eat
for two days.They don't allow people to
enter yet.Mother has the children go buy
things.His boss gives him a one week
holiday.In, into, on

Write your name on the board.

She writes in a small book
when she meets her friends.

Put water in the glass first.

Put this into the car.

Fast, quickly, earlyCome quickly, you don't have
much time.We have to go very fast (or very
early).

You are driving fast enough.

He speaks fast. I don't
understand.

12-10 ຄືກ

ລາວເວົ້າຫຼັງ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ເຂົ້າໃຈຄັກ
ເວລາຄົນວຽດນາມເວົ້າພາສາລາວ ຂ້ອຍຝັງບໍ່ມັກ
ເພິ່ນເວົ້າພາສາລາວບໍ່ຄັກ
ຕົວຟັງສີຂຽນບໍ່ຄັກ ອ່ານຍາກຫຼາຍ

ka:k²

lao³ wao:⁵ nya:ng³ kohy⁶ boh²
kao:⁶ chai:¹ ka:k²
we³ la³ ko:n³wiat⁵ nam³ wao:⁵
pa:³ sa* lao³ kohy⁶ fa:ng³ boh²
ka:k²
per:n² wao:⁵ pa³ sa* lao³ boh² ka:k²
dtua:¹ na:ng⁴ seu⁴ kian⁴ boh² ka:k²
an² nyak⁵ lai⁴

Clear (ly)

What is he saying? I don't understand it clearly.
When Vietnamese speak Lao, I can't understand (them) clearly.
He does not speak Lao clearly.
The characters are not written clearly. It is very difficult to read.

12-11 ຜິດ

ຂ້ອຍຂຽນຜິດ ອັນນີ້ຕ້ອງເປັນໂກ ບໍ່ແນ່ນໂກ
ຂະເຈົ້າເຂົ້າໃຈຜິດ
ຕ້ອງຮຽນ ດີ ດີ ເພື່ອບໍ່ໃຫ້ຜິດຫຼາຍ

pi:t³

kohy⁶ kian⁴ pi:t³ a:n¹ ni⁵ dtohng⁵
bpe:n¹ gai:⁵ boh² maen² gai:¹
ka:² chao:⁵ kao:⁶ chai:¹ pi:t³
dtohng⁵ hian³ di¹ di¹ peua² boh²
hai:⁶ pi:t³ lai⁴

To make a mistake

I misspelt it. This must be "near" not "far".
They misunderstand.
You must learn very well not to make a lot of mistakes.

12-12 ຖາມ

ຂ້ອຍຖາມລາວວ່າ ລາວຢາກກິນສົ້ມສູບ
ລາວຖາມຂ້ອຍວ່າ ລາວຂໍພັກອາທິດນຶ່ງໄດ້ບໍ່
ຂະເຈົ້າຖາມວ່າ ເຈົ້າຂອງເຮືອນໃຫ້ເຈົ້າຫຼັງນີ້ແນ່ນໃຜ
ລູກສິດບໍ່ເຂົ້າໃຈ ເຂົ້າຖາມນາຍຄູ

tam⁴

kohy⁶ tam⁴ lao³ wa² lao³ yak⁶ gi:n¹
so:m⁶ mu⁴ boh²
lao³ tam⁴ kohy⁶ wa² lao³ koh⁴ pa:k²
a¹ ti:t² neu:ng² dai:⁵ boh²
ka:³ chao:⁵ tam⁴ wa² chao:⁵ kohng⁴
heaun³ hai:⁶ sao:² la:ng³ ni⁵
maen² pai:⁴
luk⁵ si:t³ boh² kao:⁶ chai:¹ kao:⁴
tam⁴ nai³ ku³

To ask

I asked him if he wanted to eat Lao pork sausage.
He askes me if he can have a week's holiday.
They asked who was the owner of this house for rent.
(When) students do not understand, they ask the teacher.

ບົດ ຮຽນ ທີ່ ສິບ ສອງ

1. ຂອບຮຽນພາສາລາວຢູ່ຫ້ອງຮຽນຫ້ານີ້ໃນອາທິດນຶ່ງ ນີ້ນຶ່ງຮຽນຫ້າສິບນາທີ
2. ຢູ່ໃນຫ້ອງ ຮຽນຂອງຂ້ອຍມີລູກສິດພຽງແຕ່ເຈັດຄົນ ພຶດໜຸ່ມຕັ້ງໃຈຮຽນນຳນາຍຄູ
3. ວິທີສອນຂອງເພິ່ນກໍດີກວ່າພູ
4. ນີ້ວ່ານີ້ພວກເຮົາຮຽນບົດຮຽນທີ່ສືບເອັດກ່ຽວກັບວັນທີ່ແລະນີ້ໃນອາທິດ
5. ນາຍຄູຖາມວ່ານີ້ເດີມວັນຫວັງ ລູກສິດຄົນນຶ່ງຕອບວ່າວັນຈັນ.
6. ນາຍຄູຖາມອີກວ່ານີ້ອີ່ມເດີມວັນຫວັງແລະວັນທີ່ເທົ່າໃດ
7. ລູກສິດຕອບວ່າວັນອັງຄານວັນທີ່ຊາວ
8. ແລ້ວເພິ່ນໃຫ້ລູກສິດພຶດໜຸ່ມຕັ້ງໃຈວ່ານີ້ໃນອາທິດ
ວັນຈັນ ວັນອັງຄານ ວັນພຸດ ວັນພະຫັດ ວັນສາ ວັນເສົາ ວັນອາທິດ
9. ເພິ່ນເຮົາຮຽນວິທີຂຽນຕົວໜັງສືລາວ
10. ເພິ່ນຂຽນຄວາມລາວໃສ່ກະດານດຳ ແລະໃຫ້ລູກສິດອ່ານ
11. ເວົ້າຄວາມລາວໃຫ້ລູກສິດຝັງ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນຢູ່ໃນປື້ມຂຽນ
12. ບາງເທື່ອເພິ່ນເວົ້າໄວ ພວກເຮົາບໍ່ເຂົ້າໃຈຄັກ ເວລາຂຽນຈິ່ງຜິດຈາກນາຍຄູເວົ້າ.

BO:T³ HIAN³ TI² SI:P³ SOHNG⁴

1. Kohy⁴ hian³ pa³ sa⁴ lao³ yu² hohng⁴ hian³ ha⁴ meu³ nai:³ a¹ ti:t² neu:ng². Meu⁵ neu:ng² hian³ ha⁴ sip³ na³ ti¹.
2. Yu³ nai:³ hohng⁴ hian³ kohng⁴ kohy⁴ mi³ luk⁵ si:t³ piang³ dtae² che:t³ koin¹ Mo:t³ tu:k² ko:n³ dta:ng⁵ chai:¹ hian³ na:m³ nai³ ku³.
3. Wi³ ti¹ sohn⁴ kohng⁴ per:n² goh¹ di¹ gwa² mu².
4. Meu⁵ wan³ ni⁵ puak⁵ hao:³ hian³ bo:t³ hian³ ti² si:p³ e:t³ giaw² ga:p³ wa:n³ ti¹ lae² meu⁵ nai:³ a¹ ti:t².
5. Nai³ ku³ tam⁴ wa² meu⁵ ni⁵ maen² wa:n³ nya:ng⁴? Luk⁵ si:t³ ko:n³ neu:ng² dtohp⁴ wa³ wa:n³ cha:n¹.

6. Nai¹ ku³ tam⁴ ik⁶ wa² meu³ ni⁵ de¹ maen² wa:n³ nya:ng⁴ lae:² wa:n³ ti² tao:² dai:¹ ?
7. Luk⁵ si:t³ dtohp⁴ wa² wa:n³ a:ng¹ kan³ wa:n³ ti² sao³.
8. Laew⁵ per:n² hai⁶ luk⁵ si:t³ mo:t³ tu:k² ko:n³ wao:⁵ seu⁵ meu⁵ nai:³ a⁴ tirt² wa:n³ cha:n,¹ wa:n³ a:ng¹ kan³ wa:n³ pu:t² wa:n³ pa:² ha:t² wa:n³ su:k² wa:n³ sao:² wa:n⁴ a¹ ti:t².
9. Puak⁵ hao:³ hian³ wi² ti³ kian⁴ dtua¹ na:ng⁴ seu⁴ lao³.
10. Per:n² kian⁴ kwam³ lao³ sai:² ga:³ dan¹ da:m¹ lae:² hai⁶ luk⁵ si:t³ an¹.
11. Wao:⁵ kwam³ lao³ hai:⁶ luk⁵ si:t³ fa:ng³ laew⁵ hai:⁶ kian⁴ yu² nai:³ bpeu:m⁵ kian⁴.
12. Bang¹ teua² per:n² wao:⁵ wai:³ puak⁵ hao:³ boh² kao:⁶ chai:¹ ka:k² we³ la³ kian⁴ cheu:ng² pi:t³ chak⁶ nai³ ku³ wao:⁵.

LESSON 12: LAO CLASS (A letter)

1. I study Lao in school five days a week. Each day I study 50 minutes.
2. In my class there are only 7 students. Everybody studies eagerly with the teacher.
3. His teaching method is better than any other's.
4. Yesterday we studied Lesson 11 which is about dates and the days of the week.
5. The teacher asked what day it is today. A student answered that it was Monday.
6. The teacher asked again how about tomorrow. What day of the week and what day of the month will it be tomorrow?
7. The student answered that it will be Tuesday and the 20th.
8. Then the teacher had all the students say the days of the week: Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday.
9. We learned how to write Lao letters.
10. The teacher (he) writes Lao on the blackboard and the students read it.
11. (He) speaks Lao to let the students listen and write in (their) notebooks.
12. Sometimes he speaks fast (and) we don't understand clearly, so when we write, we make mistakes which are different from what the teacher said.

PART 2: GRAMMAR REVIEW

Section 1: Question Words and Short Answers

1.1 Question words

Typically, question words come at the end of a Lao sentence.

nya:ng ⁴	What?
sai: ⁴	Where?
kohng ⁴ pai: ⁴	Whose?
pai: ⁴	Who?
meua ² dai: ¹	When?
a:n ¹ dai: ¹	Which?
yang ² dai: ¹	How? (in what way)
tao: ² dai: ¹	How much?
cha:k ³	How many (units)?
do:n ¹ bpan ¹ dai: ¹	How long ago? How soon?

a:n ¹ ni ⁵ maen ² nya:ng ⁴	What is that?
chao: ⁵ ma ³ dtae: ² sai: ⁴	Where do you come from?
a:n ¹ na:n ⁵ maen ² bpeu:m ⁵ kohng ⁴ pai: ⁴	Whose book is that?
pu ⁴ na:n ⁵ maen ² pai: ⁴	Who is that?
meua ² dai: ¹ lao ³ si: ² ga:p ³	When will he return to Vientiane?
chao: ⁵ si: ² ao: ¹ a:n ¹ dai: ¹	Which one do you want?
seu ² chao: ⁵ wa ² yang ² dai: ¹	How do people say your name?
la ³ ka ³ tao: ² dai: ¹	How much does it cost?
cha:k ⁶ gi ¹ lo ³ diaw ¹ ni ⁵	How many kilos now?
chao: ⁵ ma ³ do:n ¹ bpan ¹ dai: ¹	Will you come soon?

1.2 Question particles

boh ²	? (common)
noh ³	Okay?
de ²	Isn't it?
wa: ²	And...?
maen ² boh ²	Huh? (informal)
	Right?
	True?
chao: ⁵ si: ² bpai: ¹ boh ²	Will you go?
bpai: ¹ noh ³	Go, okay?
ngam ³ noh ³	Beautiful, isn't it?
kohy ⁴ sa: ³ bai ⁴ di ¹ chao: ⁵ de ²	I'm fine, and you?
lo:t ² chao: ⁵ pe ³ wa: ²	Is your car broken?
lao ³ ma ³ laew ⁵ maen ² boh ²	He came already, right?

1.3 Responses and negative answers

1.3.1 How to say "YES"

- a) Repeat the verb in the question (see Section 5.4 below.)
- b) er¹ Yes (conversational).
- c) maen² laew⁵ Yes it is.
- d) chao:⁵ (polite)
- e) doy¹ (ka:³ nohy⁵) (self-humbling, respectful)
- f) dai:⁵ Okay, you can.

1.3.2 How to say "NO"

- a) Negate the verb in the question with "boh²." (see Section 5.4 below)
- b) boh²da:ng²na:n⁵ It's not like that.
- c) boh² maen² No, it isn't.

Section 2: Nouns and Pronouns

2.1 Nouns

2.1.1 Nouns have only one form whether singular or plural.^{1/}

ka:n ⁶ dai: ¹	Stair, stairs
heuan ³	House, houses
gerp ⁶	Shoe, shoes

Note: Plurality (which is frequently omitted in Lao) can be indicated by using the adjective "many = lai⁴" or a classifier plus a numeral (see Section 4 below on classifiers).

2.1.2 Adjectives and Verbs may be transformed into nouns with use of the prefixes "gan¹" and "kwam³". Generally speaking "gan¹" is for words indicating action, whereas "kwam³" is for passive concepts.

<u>gan¹</u>	<u>Actions</u>
gan ¹ bpai: ¹ ma ³	Traffic
gan ¹ sohn ⁴	Teaching
gan ¹ a:t ³ siang ⁴	Recording
<u>kwam³</u>	<u>Concepts</u>
kwam ³ hu ⁵	Knowledge
kwam ³ bpuay ²	Sickness
kwam ³ bpe:n ¹ ma ³	Origin

2.1.3 Noun prefixes for Verbs

Many verbs have noun forms when used in combination with certain prefixes. Some of the common nouns made in such a way are listed below,

<u>sang²</u>	<u>Craftsman</u>
sang ² dta:t ³ po:m ⁴	Barber
sang ² fai: ³ fa ⁵	Electrician
sang ² dta:t ³ seua ⁶	Tailor
sang ² dti: ¹ nger:n ³	Silversmith

^{1/} See also p.109/9-17

na:k ²	<u>Professionals</u>
na:k ² bi:n ¹	Pilot
na:k ² gi ³ la ³	Athlete
na:k ² gan ¹ tut ⁵	Diplomat
na:k ² hian ³	Student
pu ⁶	<u>Doers</u>
pu ⁶ cha:t ⁷ gan ¹	Manager
pu ⁶ nyai: ²	Adult
pu ⁶ dtaeng ²	Author
pu ⁶ kai ⁴	Vendor
luk ⁵ (poh ² , mae ²)	<u>Familial types</u>
mae ² ban ⁵	Housewife
luk ⁵ fa ⁴ faet ⁶	Twin
poh ² ka ⁵	Vendor
luk ² si:t ³	Student
ko:n ³	<u>Persons in general</u>
ko:n ³ ki ⁶ dtua: ³	Liar
ko:n ³ ngan ³	Worker
ko:n ³ chao: ⁵ su ⁵	Lover
ko:n ³ ha ⁴ bpa ¹	Fisherman

2.2 Pronouns

- 2.2.1 Pronouns do not indicate gender. For example, the word "lao³" is used for both "he" and "she".
- 2.2.2 Pronouns have only one form no matter what part of speech they indicate. For example, there is only one word for "she, hers" and that is "lao³"; however, the position of the pronoun changes depending upon its function either as a noun (before the verb) or as an adjective (following the noun) as shown below.

a:n¹ ni⁵ maen² kohng⁴chao:⁵ This is yours.

poh² chao:⁵ bpai¹ sai:⁴ Where is your father going?

chao:⁵ bpai:¹ sai:⁴ Where are you going?

- 2.2.3 English pronouns only indicate the number of persons (ie, singular or plural) and their position from the speaker (1st, 2nd, 3rd person); however, Lao pronouns and additionally indicate the ranks of both the listener and the speaker. Four main groups of listeners are listed below:

- a. Monks
- b. Elders
- c. Groups or in writing
- d. Equals

Depending on who is speaking to whom, a different pronoun is used. On the following page is a chart showing which pronoun to use to address people properly in terms of their rank from the average person's point of view as speaker. (Note: the plural prefix "puak⁵" is often used to form a plural pronoun form. Refer also to page 109/9-17.)

2.2.4 Titles of address

(a) Mr., Mrs., Sir

There are many different titles of address which should be used when talking to a person to show respect for his position in life. Such a title is used as a prefix with the first name, or alone as a pronoun. If it is used as a pronoun, it functions as either second or third person pronoun (singular or plural).

tan ¹	Respectful title (Sir)
nang ³	Miss, Mrs.
tao ⁵	Mr.

PRONOUN CHARTS: to address listeners of different ranks
from the average person's point of view



To Monks	
pa: ʔ	pa: ʔ a ' chan ' ʔ
nyə ʔ poɦ ʔ	pa: ʔ a ' chan ' ʔ
ka ʔ pa: ʔ pa: ʔ	pa: ʔ ka ʔ pa: ʔ pa: ʔ

Legend:

I	We
you	you (pl.)
he, she	they

To Elders	
pa: ʔ tan ʔ	pa: ʔ per: n ʔ
tan ʔ ta: nɔ ʔ lai ʔ	per: n ʔ ta: nɔ ʔ lai ʔ
ka ʔ noɦy ʔ	pa: ʔ ka ʔ noɦy ʔ



MAIN CHART (To Equals)	
pa: ʔ	ka: ʔ
pa: ʔ ka: ʔ	ka: ʔ ka: ʔ
mu ʔ cha: ʔ	mu ʔ cha: ʔ
pa: ʔ cha: ʔ	pa: ʔ cha: ʔ
ka: ʔ	ka: ʔ
ka: ʔ pa: ʔ	ka: ʔ pa: ʔ
ka: ʔ pa: ʔ	ka: ʔ pa: ʔ



In Speeches and Writing	
ka: ʔ	ka: ʔ pa: ʔ cha: ʔ
tan ʔ	pa: ʔ tan ʔ
pa: ʔ	pa: ʔ ka: ʔ
pa: ʔ	pa: ʔ ka: ʔ pa: ʔ

(b) General

In order to show respect towards relatives of parental age or older, the honorific prefix "nya³" is placed before the appropriate familial term. (For a list of family names, see the table below.) In order to show respect for non-relatives whom you respect as much as you respect your own relatives, familial terms, both with and without the honorific prefix are used. For example:

nya ³ poh ²	Father
nya ³ mae ²	Mother
ay ⁵	Big brother
nohng ⁵ sao ⁴	Little sister

LIST OF FAMILY NAMES

	PATERNAL RELATIVES		MATERNAL RELATIVES	
GRANDPARENTS' GENERATION	poh ² bpu ²	Grandfather	poh ² tao: ⁶	Grandfather
	mae ⁶ nya ²	Grandmother	mae ² tao: ⁶	Grandmother
PARENTS' GENERATION	poh ²	Father	mae ²	Mother
	lu:ng ³	Older uncle	eu:ng ³	Older uncle
	ao ¹	Younger uncle	na ⁵ bao ²	Younger uncle
	bpa ⁵	Older aunt	bpa ⁵	Older aunt
	a ¹	Younger aunt	na ⁵ sao ⁴	Younger aunt
CHILDREN'S GENERATION	ay ⁵	Older brother	luk ⁵	Child
	nohng ⁵ sai ³	Younger brother	lan ⁴	Grand child
	euay ⁵	Older sister	le:n ⁴	Great grandchild
	nohng ⁵ sao ⁴	Younger sister	lohn ⁶	Great great grandchild

2.3 Time, Day and Date, Nouns

<u>we³ la³</u>	<u>Times</u>
meu ⁵ sao: ⁵	morning (6am-12am)
dtohn ¹ tiang ²	noon, mid-day (12am)
dtohn ¹ bai ²	afternoon (1pm-6pm)
meu ⁵ laeng ³	evening (3pm onward)
gang ¹ keun ³	night (after dark)
<u>wa:n³</u>	<u>Days</u>
wa:n ³ cha:n ¹	Monday
wa:n ³ a:ng ¹ kan ³	Tuesday
wa:n ³ pu:t ²	Wednesday
wa:n ³ pa: ² ha:t ³	Thursday
wa:n ³ su:k ³	Friday
wa:n ³ sao: ⁴	Saturday
wa:n ³ a ¹ ti:t ²	Sunday
<u>deuan¹</u>	<u>Months</u>
ma: ² ga: ³ la ³	January
gu:m ¹ pa ³	February
mi ³ na ³	March
me ³ sa ⁴	April
peu:t ³ sa: ³ pa ³	May
mi: ² tu: ³ na ³	June
goh ¹ la: ² ga: ³ da ¹	July
si:ng ⁴ ha ⁴	August
ga:n ¹ nya ³	September
dtu: ³ la ³	October
peu:t ³ sa: ³ chi: ³ ga ¹	November
ta:n ³ wa ³	December
<u>bpi¹</u>	<u>12-year cycle</u>
bpi ¹ suat ⁵	Rat (1960)
bpi ¹ sa: ³ lu: ²	Ox
bpi ¹ kan ⁴	Tiger (1950)
bpi ¹ toh: ³	Rabbit
bpi ¹ ma: ² long ³	Dragon (2000)
bpi ¹ ma: ² se:ng ⁴	Snake
bpi ¹ ma: ² mia ³	Horse (1990)
bpi ¹ ma: ² mae ³	Goat
bpi ¹ wohk ⁵	Monkey (1980)
bpi ¹ la: ² ga ¹	Cock
bpi ¹ choh ¹	Dog (1970)
bpi ¹ gu:n ¹	Pig

Section 3: Adjectives

3.1 Lao has no articles (the, a, an).

3.2 Unlike English, Lao adjectives follow the noun they modify:

dto:³ ni⁵ This table
dtao⁵ dohk⁴ mai:⁵ Flower vase

3.3 Most predicate adjectives function as verbs and therefore do not require a verb as in English.

nohng⁵ sao⁴ ngam³ lai⁴ Younger sister is beautiful.
a:n¹ ni⁵ di¹ It is good.

3.4 Repeating an adjective in Lao is a common way of intensifying the quality of the adjective. Although the two words are the same, they are pronounced on different tones with the first of the pair of adjectives pronounced on a higher level tone, higher than tone #3.

chao:⁵ ngam³ ngam³ You are very beautiful.
na⁶ kohy⁶ daeng³ daeng³ My face is really red.

Another way of intensifying the quality of an adjective is to use the word "very = lai⁴".

3.5 Comparative adjectives

gwa ²	more than, -er
ti ² sut ³	most, -est
gwa ² mu ²	more than others/ most
tao: ² dai: ¹ haeng ³ di ¹	the --- the better

1/

di ¹ gwa ²	better
di ¹ ti ² su:t ³	best
di ¹ gwa ² mu ²	better than others/best
lai ⁴ tao: ² dai: ¹ haeng ³ di ¹	the more the better

3.6 Common value suffixes + Prefixes for adjectives:

di ¹	positive value suffix
ki ⁶	negative value prefix

1/ See also pp.95/8-24 and 136/12-4

ngiap ⁵ di ¹	quiet enough
gwang ⁵ di ¹	wide enough
ki ⁶ lai ⁵	ugly
ki ⁶ heung ⁴	jealous
ki ⁶ kan ⁵	lazy

Section 4: Classifiers

- 4.1 In English, there are two types of nouns: countable nouns like "book" and uncountable ones like "water". English quantifies the uncountable nouns by measuring them in terms of countable objects; for example a loaf of bread, a drop of water, a roll of paper, a bunch of bananas, a herd of cattle, etc. On the other hand, Lao quantifies all its nouns in terms of countable objects, or more precisely, in terms of classes of objects. Consequently, the count words are known as "classifiers". The main classifiers in Lao are listed on the following page.
- 4.2 In practice, all numerals that indicate the quantity of a noun (like one elephant or two trees) are always used with classifiers. These classifiers are similar to adjectives in that they follow the noun they classify. The typical word order is Noun-Number-Classifier as shown in the following examples:

nohng ³ sai ⁵ sohng ⁴ ko:n ³	Younger brother two <u>people</u> (ie, two younger brothers)
sang ⁵ si:p ³ dtua ¹	Elephant ten <u>animals</u> (ie, ten elephants)
mai: ⁵ cha:n ¹ sam ⁴ go:k ³	Sandlewood three <u>trees</u> (ie, three sandlewood trees)

However, the position of the number "one" is an exception. It's location in the sentence differs from all other numbers in that it follows the classifier (Noun-Classifier-"One" instead of preceding it).

heuan ³ la:ng ⁴ neu:ng ²	House <u>building</u> one (one house)
chia ⁵ bai: ¹ neu:ng ²	Paper <u>sheet</u> one (one sheet of paper)

LIST OF COMMON CLASSIFIERS

a:n¹. Thing (for general objects)
 baep⁶. Style, way
 bai:¹. Leaf, sheet
 bohn¹. Place
 dohk⁶. Flower
 dto:n⁵. Plant, tree
 dto:¹. Animal
 dtua¹. Body, animal
 ga:p³. Box
 gaew⁵. Bottle
 go:k³. Tree
 gohk⁶. Cigarette
 gohn⁵. Solids, soap, cake
 gohng¹. A group
 hohng⁶. Room
 hua⁴. Vegetables, head, round objects
 hup⁵. Picture
 ka:n³. Machines, vehicles
 kap⁵. Meal
 ko:n³. Person
 ku¹. A pair
 lam³. Boat, plane

muat⁶. Combined units
 naew³. Kind, sort
 nuay². Fruit, Small round objects
 o:ng¹. Holy person
 peun⁴. Cloth, rolls
 sa:³ ba:p³. Copy
 sa:n⁵. Floor
 se:n⁴. Line road, long objects
 sohng³. Envelope
 taew⁴. Row
 teua². Times
 ti³. Times, -th
 tiaw². Journey, trip
 wi⁴. Banana, comb
 yang². Example
 lang⁴. Building, homes
 lem³. Book
 loh:t⁶. Tube
 luk⁵. Bullet, ball
 ma:t². Bound bunch, bundle
 me:t². Grain
 mu². Group

Section 5: Verbs and Tenses

5.1 Verbs have only one form no matter who or what their subject is.

kohy ⁶	ma ³	I	come
chao: ⁵	ma ³	You	come
lao ³	ma ³	He	comes
hao: ³	ma ³	We	come
chao: ⁵	ma ³	You (pl.)	come
kao: ⁴ chao: ⁵	ma ³	They	come

5.2 Verbs have only one form no matter what tense they indicate. Tenses are indicated by additional word particles (discussed one by one in the paragraphs which follow)^{1/} which are either placed before or after the verb.

- a. The past tense particle "laew⁵" follows the verb and the past tense particle "dai:⁵" comes before the verb:

laew ⁵	Already	2/
dai: ⁵	Did, already	

lao³ ma⁵ laew⁵ He came
 lao³ yu² ni⁵ laew⁵ He was here
 kohy⁶ boh² dai:⁵ bpai:¹ I didn't go

- b. The future tense particle comes before the verb or the negative if there is one. The future tense can be formed with either of two words "si:² or cha:³" since they are interchangeable.

si: ²	Will
cha: ³	Will

chao:⁵ si:² ma³ boh² Will you come?
 kohy⁶ si:² boh² ma³ I will not come.
 lao³ cha:³ bpai:¹ He will go to Vientiane.
 wiang³ cha:n¹

^{1/} Refer also to page 107/9-12 (imperative (must, should, have to) and page 118/10-4 progressive (to be (do)ing now).

^{2/} See also p.37/3-9

- c. Perfect tenses in Lao are formed by placing the particle "kery³" in front of the verb.

kery ³	Have, has
-------------------	-----------

kohy⁴ kery³ bpai:¹ I have gone to Pakse.
 bpak⁴ se³

- d. The passive voice is formed by placing the particle "teuk⁶"

teuk ⁶	Was ... - ed
-------------------	--------------

ki⁶ la:k² teuk⁶ cha:p³ The robber was captured
 kohng⁴ ni⁵ teuk⁶ so:ng² These things were brought from
 ma³ chak⁶ wiang³ cha:n¹ Vientiane.

The subject or actor can be inserted between "teuk⁶" the verb and the passive voice still maintained, as follows:

ki⁶ la:k² teuk⁶ dta:m¹ The robber was caught by the police.
 luat⁵ cha:p³

- 5.3 In Lao many verbs can be placed one after another in a chain without intervening words. The verbs are assumed to be arranged in the order in which the action took place. ^{1/}

lao³ bpai:¹ hian³ yu² He went to study in Laos.
 bpa³ tet⁵ lao³
 lao³ hian³ bpai:¹ yu² He studied to go live in Laos.
 bpa³ tet⁶ lao³

- 5.4 "Yes" answers are commonly given in Lao by simply repeating the verb(s). Similarly, "No" answers are made by negating and repeating the verb(s).

chao:⁵ mi³ ay⁵ boh⁵ mi³ Do you have brothers? Yes.
 chao:⁵ kery³ bpai:¹ dta:³ Have you ever gone to market? No.
 lat⁶ boh⁵ boh⁵ kery³ bpai:¹

- 5.5 The verb "TO BE" in English has three main forms in Lao: ^{2/}

maen ²	To link subject and predicate.
bpe:n ¹	To indicate class, group, condition.
yu ²	To indicate location.

a:n¹ ni⁵ maen² nya:ng⁴ What is this?
 kian⁴ bpe:n¹ dtua¹ The writing is to be in capital
 .peu:m³ letters
 ban⁵ kohy⁶ yu² ni⁵ My house is here

- 5.6 The verb "CAN" in English has two main forms in Lao.

dai: ⁵	For permission, possibility
bpe:n ¹	For skill, learned activity

chao:⁵ ma³ dai:⁵ boh² Can you come?
 ka:p³ lo:t² bpe:n¹ boh² Can you drive a car?

^{1/} See also pp.28/2-6 and 69/6-13

^{2/} See also pp.20/1-3 and 36/3-5

- 5.7 a. "Bpai:¹ and ma³" as auxiliary verbs usually indicate the direction of the action from the speakers point of view: ^{1/}

bpai: ¹	The action is going away from the speaker.
ma ³	The action is coming towards the speaker.

lo:t² ohk⁶ bpai:¹ laew⁵ The car left already.
 nai³ ku³ ohk⁶ ma³ dtae² The teacher is coming from the
 hohng⁶ hian classroom.
 kohy⁶ si:² pa³ chao:⁵ I'll take you to the Morning
 bpai:¹ dta³ lat⁶ sao:⁵ market.
 lao³ dai:⁵ pa³ kohy⁶ ma³ He brought me here.
 ni⁵

- b. As an auxiliary verb "go and come" can also be used to describe a thought.

o⁵ kohy⁶ leum³ bpai:¹ Oh! I forgot that completely
 (that has gone completely out of my mind).

Section 6: Adverbs

- 6.1 1. As in English, adverbs of time can come at the beginning or end of a sentence, or before or after the predicate.

diaw¹ ni⁵ hao:³ si:² Now where shall we go?
 bpai:¹ sai:⁴
 hao:³ yu² sai:⁴ diaw¹ Where are we now?
 ni⁵

- 6.2 Adjectives can function as adverbs, in which case they have an adverbial meaning. ^{2/}

	Adj.	Adv.
ge:ng ²	Clever, good	Well
mai: ²	New	Again

lao³ ge:ng² He is clever.
 tan² bpak⁶ pa³ sa⁴ lao³ You speak Lao well.
 ge:ng²
 la:ng⁴ ni⁵ maen² This building is a new house.
 hedan¹ mai:²
 kohy⁶ cha:¹ ma³ yiam⁵ I'll come visit again.
 yam¹ mai:²

- 6.3 In Lao, one way to give emphasis to an adverb is by repeating it. ^{3/}

bpai:¹ wai:³ wai:³ Go very fast!
 mi³ lai⁴ lai⁴ There are so many!

^{1/} See also p.20/1-1 and 1-2

^{2/} See also p.54/5-7

^{3/} See also p.44/4-4 and 4-5

- 6.4 "Wai:⁵" - As a simple adverb, "wai:⁵" means "down" or "keep" (and implies for a future reason).

kian⁴ seu² wai:⁵ ni⁵ Write down your name.

wang³ wai:⁵ ni⁵ Put it down here, keep it here.

- 6.5 "Sai:²" - As a simple adverb "sai:²" means "in". ^{1/}

ao:¹ na:m⁵ dtan¹ sai:² ga¹ Put sugar in the coffee.

However, as a verb sai:² means "to put on".

sai:² seu⁶ pa⁶ Put on your clothes.

Section 7: Connecting Particles

- 7.1 "Wa²" Typically this word introduces a secondary thought. Occasionally it is used as a verb to mean "say".

kohy⁶ ki:t² wa² I think that

kohy⁶ dai:⁵ wa² chao:⁵ bpai:¹ goh¹ I say you can go.

dtae² wa⁵ But....

ta⁶ wa² If

- 7.2 "Cheu:ng²" ("then", "so", "because") indicates a causal relationship between two thoughts (pattern: cause - effect). ^{2/}

liaw⁵ sai:⁵ cheu:ng² boh² Turn right so you can avoid the dust.

bpae⁶ si:p³ cheu:ng² cha:³ 80 kip, then I'll go.

bpae:¹ nya:ng⁴ cheu:ng² Why is it so expensive?

paeng³ tae⁵ lo:t² chao:⁵ pe³ boh² cheu:ng² Has your car broken down?
boh² ki:² ma³ Then you didn't come by car.

- 7.3 "Goh¹" ("then", "because") introduces a secondary thought (pattern: statement - reason). ^{3/}

hian³ lai⁴ teua² goh¹ leum³ I study all the time, then I forget it right away.

ka:⁴ chao:⁵ goh¹ bpai:¹ They then will go to the market.

dtai:³ lat⁶ kohy⁴ goh¹ yak⁴ hian³ keu³ I then want to study too.

ga:n¹ yak⁴ bpai:¹ ber:ng² si:² ne³ I want to see a movie because
ka:³ chao:⁵ goh¹ sai:⁵ yu² they're showing one at the
wa:t¹ temple.

^{1/} See also p.137/12-8

^{2/} See also p.53/5-6

^{3/} See also p.93/8-18

- 7.4 "Ti²" ("that, which, what, for") introduces a secondary clause or thought.

so:m⁶ mu⁴ maen² kohng⁴ gi:n¹ Sour meat is the Lao food which
 lao³ ti² kohy⁴ ma:k² lai⁴ I like very much.

keuang² ti² chao:⁵ dtohng⁵ The things that you need are over
 gan¹ yu² tang³ ni⁵ there.

kohp⁴ chai:⁵ lai⁴ lai⁴ ti² Thank you very much for taking me.
 pa³ ma³

kohy⁶ nyi:n³ di¹ ti² dai:⁵ I am happy that I met you.
 po:p² chao:⁵

- 7.5 "Dta:ng⁵" ("so" many, so much) shows the number of items mentioned is unusual.

he:n⁴ chao:⁵ sen⁵ bpi⁵ dta:ng⁵ I see you bought so many tickets.
 lai:⁴ bai:¹

dta:ng⁵ sam³ si² hohy⁵ ko:n³ 3 or 4 hundred people came to the
 ma³ gi:n¹ liang⁵ party.

Section 8: Symbols and Punctuation

Symbol	Name	Function
๗	goh: ³ la: ²	repeat the previous word
๗	goh: ³ la: ²	ditto mark
๗๑๗	nya:ng ³ mi ³ ik ⁴ dtoh ² bpai: ¹	et cetera (etc.)
.	me:t ²	period
,	chu:t ³	comma
:	sohng ⁴ me:t ²	colon
-	kit ⁴ ka:n ⁴	hyphen
_____	kit ⁴ mai ⁴	underlining
.....	me:t ² la: ²	omission
?	tam ⁴	question mark
!	a: ⁶ sa: ³ cha:n ¹	exclamation mark
" "	le:p ² sohn ⁵	quotation marks
()	wo:ng ¹ le:p ²	parentheses
๑ ๒ ๓ ๔ ๕ ๖ ๗ ๘ ๙	lek ⁵	numbers (1 to 9)

PART 3: HOW TO READ LAO

THE LESSON PLAN

	CONSONANTS							VOWELS				TONE MARKS		TONES						Page	
	Kang	Nasal finals (n, ng, m)	Tam	Sung	Aspirants	Stops (p, t, k)	Consonant clusters (-w) and the missing "g."	Long	Short	Diphthongs (ia, ua, eua)	Semi-vowels (-w, -y)	Mai ek	Mai to	1 Low	2 Mid	3 High	4 Rising	5 High falling	6 Low falling		
LESSON 1	(X)							X						X						162	
LESSON 2	X											X			X					164	
LESSON 3	(X)								X							X				167	
LESSON 4		X	(X)																	169	
LESSON 5										X										172	
LESSON 6			(X)								X									174	
LESSON 7			X												X	X				176	
LESSON 8				X												X	X			179	
LESSON 9					X															183	
LESSON 10												X							X	X	185
LESSON 11						X												X	X	188	
LESSON 12							X													191	

Introduction on Tones and Letters

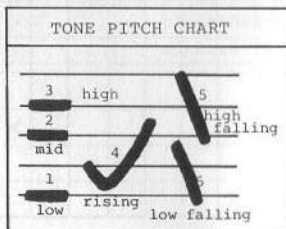
The reading mastery of Lao words can be achieved step by step with the exercises in this section. Reading mastery covers two elements: the learning of an alphabet originating from an ancient Indian script, and the development of the ability to read tones.

1. TONES

The role of tones in the Lao Language is large since each word has a tone which is coded as part of its spelling. In fact, the tones are often the only way to distinguish between words; some examples of words with the same sound but different tones are shown below.

Sound of word	Case A		Case B	
	Tone	Meaning	Tone	Meaning
gai:	1	far	5	near
ha	4	meet	6	five
kao:	4	they	6	rice
poh	3	father	2	enough
mu	4	pig	2	friend
sao:	2	rent	5	morning
si	2	four	4	color

In Lao there are six tones which are relative in pitch to each other. They are summarized in the following table and referred to by number: 1, 2 and 3 are level tones, 4 is a rising tone, 5 and 6 are falling tones.



The way to read the tone of a Lao word is from its spelling which is a code combination of four possible letters:

1. an initial consonant: 3 types (kang, tan and sung)
2. a vowel : 2 types (long and short)
3. a final consonant : 3 types (stops, nasals and others)
4. a tone mark : 2 common types (mai ek and mai to)

The code for tone determination is summarized below and then introduced in a progressive learning sequence in the lessons which follow.

TONE DETERMINATION CODE

The spelling of Lao words determines their tone.

Consonant group \ Vowel and tone mark	Long or Long+ nasal or Short+ nasal	Short or Short+ stop	Long+stop	Tone mark	
				mai ek	mai to
Kang Group	1	3	6	2	5
Tam Group	3	2	5	2	5
Sung Group	4	3	6	2	6

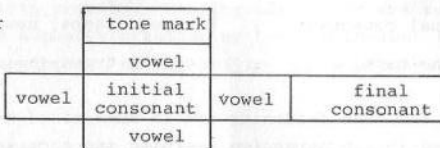
2. LETTERS

Lao letters are not written one after another in a string, as in English. Rather, each of four types of Lao letters (initial consonant, vowel, final consonant and tone marks) are written in different positions in a syllable. The seven possible positions in the Lao syllable for each of the four types of letters are shown below.

Position numbers:



Positions for each type of letter:



The four types of Lao letters are further summarized in the paragraphs which follow.

1) INITIAL CONSONANTS - first letter, position #1.

Every Lao word must have an initial consonant which is in the position #1. There are three groups of Lao consonants or "akson":

- a. kang
- b. tam
- c. sung

Note: Do not attempt to translate the Lao names of the consonant groups into English as these names relate to their old tone which is no longer used and will only confuse you.

2) VOWELS - second letter, position #2, #3, #4 and/or #5.

Every Lao word (syllable) must have a vowel. Depending on which vowel, it might be written in any one or combination of positions #2 to #5. There are two types of vowels:

- a. long vowels
- b. short vowels

Unlike English, long vowels and short vowels in Lao have the same sound; they differ only with respect to the duration over which they are pronounced.

3) FINAL CONSONANTS - third letter, position #6.

Only some Lao words have a final consonant which if it exists, is written in the #6 position. There are only two significant groups of final consonants:

a. nasal finals (n, ng, m)

b. unreleased stops (k, p, t)

4) TONE MARKS - fourth letter, position #7.

Only some Lao words have a tone mark which, if it exists, is written in the #7 position. Although there are four tone marks in Lao, two of the marks (mai chadtawa and mai dti) are rarely used. The 4 tone marks are as follows:

Common: $\overset{!}{x}$ mai⁵ ek¹ fixes the tone of all syllables as mid-tone.

$\overset{!}{x}$ mai⁵ to⁴ fixes the tone of all syllables as a falling tone.

Rare: $\overset{v}{x}$ mai⁵ dti¹ raises the tone of a syllable.

$\overset{+}{x}$ mai⁵ cha:³ dta:³ wa³

Although the focus of PART 3 is on teaching reading, large-size letters are introduced to clearly show how the written letters are formed. The loop is always the starting point for writing a letter. Most consonants contain a loop; however, this starting loop is not essential and it is often omitted when writing in cursive script. Nonetheless, the reason it is usually included is that this loop makes writing look more attractive.

Note: The phonetic equivalents of all exercises are listed at the end of PART 3 after Lesson 12 (page 194).

LESSON 1: kang + long = tone 1

3
2
1 — low tone

The first tone, tone 1, is a low tone. It is coded by an akson kang consonant (low tone consonant) and a long vowel. In this lesson, one of the akson kang consonants and the basic long vowels are covered.

In an initial position the consonant 9 (pronounced "oh'") is an akson kang consonant (ie, it belongs to the group of consonants to be introduced in Lesson 2). When the consonant is the initial letter of a word, it has no consonant sound unlike the other consonants such as "boh'" which have sounds ("b", etc.). Thus, a syllable with the initial consonant "oh'" plus a vowel ("a") is simply pronounced as the vowel ("a"). When this akson kang consonant is followed by a long vowel sound, the resulting syllable is spoken on tone 1. Because it has no consonant sound, this letter is the silent first letter of all syllables beginning with a vowel sound which is needed in writing since all written words must start with a consonant letter.

In Lao there are nine basic long vowels. Each vowel is written in a fixed position relative to the initial consonant; this position is called its picture. Although each vowel has only one picture, the pictures of all vowels are not the same: some vowels are written above the consonant, some below, some before, some after, and some have a combination of positions. The basic vowel pictures relative to the initial consonant 9 are shown below; all are pronounced on tone 1.

CHART OF BASIC VOWEL POSITIONS

	Above i' eu' oh' 9 9 9		
Before e' ae' o'	Initial consonant	After a'	Combination er'
t9 u9 l9	9	9a	t9
	Below u' 9		

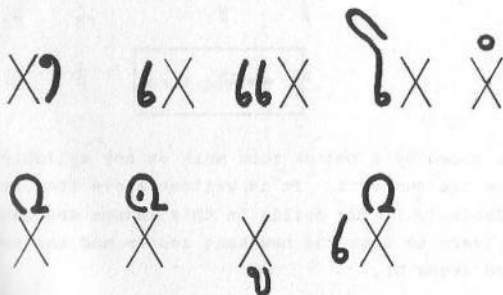
Contrast Exercise

1.1	97	9̇	119	19
1.2	9̇	19	9̇	9̇
1.3	19̇	9̇	9̇	19

Reading Exercise

1.4	9̇	97	9̇	19	9̇
1.5	19	119	9̇	19̇	9̇
1.6	19	97	19̇	119	9̇
1.7	9̇	9̇	9̇	19	19

Letter Writing Style: Basic Long Vowels



LESSON 2: mai ek + any syllable = tone 2

There are eight akson kang letters; one you know already (oh'). The following chart presents all the akson kang consonants which, when spoken as letters, are pronounced on tone 1 since the letter name includes a long vowel.

No initial consonant sound	Voiced			Voiceless			
oh'	boh'	doh'	yoh'	bpoh'	dtoh'	goh'	choh'
๑	ບ	ດ	ຢ	ປ	ຕ	ກ	ຈ

Note: Aspiration is a little puff of air that you can feel with your hand when you say the English letters "k" or "p" or "t". Each of these aspirated letters has an unaspirated counterpart which, when spoken, has no significant puff of air; for example, when you say the English letter "g". (Try the hand test.) The unaspirated letters "bp" and "dt" in Lao occur as initial sounds, whereas in English they occur only as medial sounds, as in the words "happy" and "bottle". These sounds seem to be halfway between the letters "b and p" and between "d and t" respectively; hence the phonetic transcripts "bp" and "dt".

The new tone introduced in this lesson is tone 2, which is a level mid tone.

3	
2	— mid tone
1	

Tone 2 is coded by a mai ek tone mark on any syllable. A mai ek looks like the number 1. It is written above the first consonant of a syllable (x). The drills in this lesson are designed to help you learn to hear the new kang sounds and the new tone introduced here (tone 2).

Contrast Exercise

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|----|----|
| 2.1 | ບາ | ປາ | ດາ | ຕາ |
| 2.2 | ຢີ | ື | ເດ | ເຕ |
| 2.3 | ແບ | ແປ | ຕູ | ຕູ |
| 2.4 | ໂຍ | ໂປ | ຕໍ | ຕໍ |
| 2.5 | ເຢີ | ເືີ | | |

Tone Exercise

- | | | | | |
|-----|----|----|----|----|
| 2.6 | ບໍ | ບໍ | ດາ | ດາ |
| 2.7 | ປູ | ປູ | ແກ | ແກ |
| 2.8 | ປາ | ປາ | ຈີ | ຈີ |
| 2.9 | ຕໍ | ຕໍ | ໂກ | ໂກ |

Reading Exercise

2.10 ອາ ດາ ປາ

2.11 ຕີ ຈີ ກີ

2.12 ເບ ເປ ເດ

2.13 ບີ ກີ ຈີ

2.14 ປູ ຕູ ກູ

2.15 ແຈ ແດ ແກ

2.16 ເອີ ເປີ ເດີ

2.17 ໂປ ໂຕ ໂກ

2.18 ບໍ່ ບຸ່ ຈໍ່

Letter Writing Style: Kang Consonants

ອ ບ ດ ຢ

ປ ຕ ກ ຈ

3 — high tone
2
1

This lesson introduces a new tone, tone 3, which is a level high tone. It is coded by an akson kang consonant combined with a short vowel. The short vowels are spoken with the same sound as the long vowels, only their duration is shorter and they end with a sudden stop which is phoneticized as a colon(:). A syllable composed of an akson kang consonant with a short vowel is spoken on tone 3. The following chart compares the short and long vowel written forms of the nine basic vowels.

BASIC SHORT AND LONG VOWELS

Short vowels	a: ³	e: ³	ae: ³	o: ³	oh: ³	i: ³	eu: ³	u: ³	er: ³
	9:	19:	119:	19:	191:	9	9	9	19
Long vowels	a'	e'	ae'	o'	oh'	i'	eu'	u'	er'
	91	19	119	19	9	9	9	9	19

NOTE A

NOTE B

NOTE C

Notice three changes for writing short vowels:

- The symbol **9:** is often used as part of the vowel picture to indicate a short vowel.
- The symbol **191:** is quite different from its long vowel form **9**.
- Many long vowels merely subtract a tail to form their short vowel form.

Duration Exercise

3.1 ອະ ອາ

ື ື

3.2 ເຕະ ເຕ

ແກ ແກະ

3.3 ເຕາະ ຕໍ່

ູ ູ່

3.4 ເກີ ເກີ່

Tone Exercise

3.5 ຊີ ຊີ່ ຊີ ຕາ ຕາ່ ຕະ

3.6 ບໍ່ ບໍ່່ ເບາະ ໂດ ໂດ່ ໂດະ

3.7 ອູ ອູ່ ອູ ອີ ອີ່ ອີ

3.8 ແປ ແປ່ ແປະ ເອ ເອ່ ເອະ

3.9 ເກີ ເກີ່ ເກີ

Reading Exercise

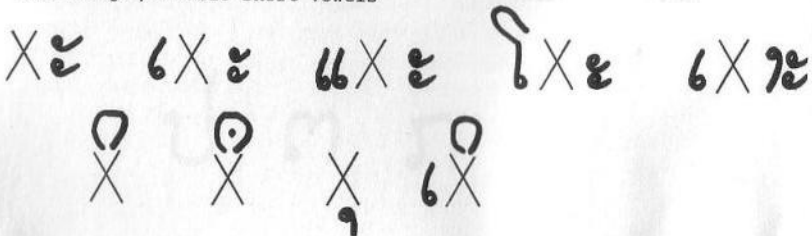
3.10 ອະ ື ເບະ ແປະ ຸ

3.11 ື ໂດະ ເຕາະ ເກີ ຈະ

3.12 ໂປະ ຸ ດະ ດີ ເຊີ

3.13 ເອາະ ເຕະ ກະ ຈຸ ດີ

Letter Writing Style: Basic Short Vowels



LESSON 4: Nasal finals (-n, -ng, -m)

There are three nasal consonants (n, ng and m). When used as final consonants, nasal consonants code only the tone of syllables with short vowels. For example, an akson kang plus only a short vowel is a code for tone 3, but with a nasal final it is a code for tone 1. An akson kang with a long vowel, with or without a nasal final, is a code for tone 1. An akson kang with a long vowel, with or without a nasal final, is a code for tone 1. The nasal finals are tam consonants. They are written as follows and spoken on tone 3.

	Long vowel syllable			Short vowels syllable		
Without final	a'	e'	i'	a:³	e:³	i:³
With nasal final	an'	eng'	im'	a:n'	e:ng'	i:m'

In certain cases a final consonant changes the written picture of the vowel in a syllable. The following table indicates these changes:

	a	e	ae	o	oh	i	eu	u	er
List of long vowels	x ¹	cx	ax	ix	x ³	x ³	x ³	x ³	cx ³
Long which have new forms with final consonants	-	-	-	-	x ³ x	-	-	-	-
List of short vowels	x ²	cx ²	ax ²	ix ²	ox ²	ix ²	ex ²	ux ²	er ²
Short which have new forms with final consonants	x ² x	cx ² x	ax ² x	ix ² x	ox ² x	-	-	-	-

NOTE A NOTE B NOTE C

There are three types of changes in writing vowels in syllables with final letters:

- In most cases when words end in a final letter, the symbol for a short vowel x² changes to a symbol known as a mai⁵ ga:n¹ (x²x) which is written above the initial consonant.
- The one exception is the vowel ix² which changes completely to a new symbol known as a mai⁵ go:n¹ (ix²x) when followed by a final consonant; it is written above the initial consonant.
- The vowel x³ changes to the letter x³x in syllables with final letters; its short form cx³ changes to a similar vowel symbol which is distinguishable by the addition of a mai ga:n (cx³x). (Note: This vowel symbol is the same symbol as the akson kang consonant 9, but used after an initial consonant instead of being the initial consonant itself.

The final sound -a:m has two different pictures: (ǎ) and (ǎ̃). Both follow the tone rules for a short vowel ending with a nasal final, although the latter form is preferred in writing.

CUMULATIVE TONE CODES	
Tone 1	kang + long kang + short + nasal
Tone 2	any syllable + mai ek
Tone 3	kang + short

TONE PITCH CHART	
3	<u>high</u>
2	<u>mid</u>
1	<u>low</u>

Contrast Exercise

4.1 ㄉㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ

4.2 ㄉㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ

4.3 ㄉㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ

Duration Exercise

4.4 ㄉㄚˊ ǎ ㄋㄚˊ ǎ̃

4.5 ㄋㄚˊ ǎ ㄋㄚˊ ǎ̃

4.6 ㄋㄚˊ ㄉㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄉㄚˊ

Reading Exercise

4.7 ㄉㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄉㄚˊ ㄉㄚˊ ㄉㄚˊ

4.8 ㄉㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄉㄚˊ ㄉㄚˊ ㄉㄚˊ

4.9 ㄉㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄉㄚˊ ㄉㄚˊ ㄉㄚˊ

4.10 ㄉㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄋㄚˊ ㄉㄚˊ ㄉㄚˊ ㄉㄚˊ

4.11	ປອງ	ປານ	ໂປນ	ປຸງ	ເປັນ	ປົນ
4.12	ເປ່ງ	ເປັນ	ປ່ານ	ປັງ	ປິນ	ປຸ່ນ
4.13	ແດງ	ເດີນ	ດອນ	ດຶງ	ດົນ	ດຳ
4.14	ດ່າງ	ເດັ່ນ	ດ່ານ	ດັງ	ດັນ	ດົ່ນ
4.15	ຕອງ	ຕອນ	ຕານ	ເຕັງ	ຕົນ	ຕຳ
4.16	ຕ່າງ	ຕົ່ນ	ຕ່ອນ	ຕັງ	ຕຸ່ນ	ຕຳ
4.17	ກອງ	ເກນ	ແກນ	ກຸງ	ກັນ	ກົນ
4.18	ແກ່ງ	ກ່ອນ	ໂກ່ນ	ກັງ	ກິນ	ກຳ
4.19	ໂຢງ	ຍົນ	ຍົນ	ຢັງ	ຍັນ	ຢຳ
4.20	ຍ່າງ	ຍ່ອນ	ຍິ່ນ	ຍັງ	ຍັນ	ຍຳ
4.21	ເຈັງ	ຈົນ	ຈອນ	ເຈັງ	ຈຸນ	ຈຳ
4.22	ແຈ່ງ	ເຈັ່ນ	ຈ່ານ	ຈັງ	ຈົ່ນ	ຈຳ

Letter Writing Style : Nasal Finals

ນ ງ ມ

LESSON 5: Diphthongs (ia, ua, eua)

Diphthongs are combinations of two vowel sounds (i or u or eu plus a). They follow the same tone code rules as long and short simple vowels. Their written picture involves a combination of several positions. Some of the pictures even change form when they are in a syllable with a final consonant. The following table lists all the diphthongs and their variant forms.

	ia	ua	eua
List of <u>long</u> diphthongs	[x]ᵃ	xᵃ	[xᵃ]
<u>Long</u> which change with final consonants	xᵃx	xᵃx	-
	ia:	ua:	eua:
List of <u>short</u> diphthongs	[x]ᵃ	xᵃ	[xᵃ]
<u>Short</u> which have new forms with final consonants	xᵃx	xᵃx	-

CUMULATIVE TONE CODES	
Tone 1	kang + long kang + short + nasal
Tone 2	any syllable + mai ek
Tone 3	kang + short

TONE PITCH CHART	
3	<u>high</u>
2	<u>mid</u>
1	<u>low</u>

Duration Exercise

- 5.1 ເປັ້ງ ເປັ້ງະ ເດືອ ເດືອ
- 5.2 ຕົວ ຕົວະ

Tone Exercise

- 5.3 ເປື້ອ ເປື້ອ ຈິວ ຈິວ
- 5.4 ອງຸນ ອງຸນ ກງຸງ ກງຸງ

Reading Exercise

- 5.5 ອງຸນ ອງຸງ ເປັ້ງ ດງຸນ
- 5.6 ດງຸນ ກງຸງ ເຈັ້ງ ຈງຸນ
- 5.7 ອັວ ບັວ ຢວງ ດວນ
- 5.8 ດວງ ກວນ ຢ່ວງ ຈິວ
- 5.9 ເອືອນ ເປື້ອ ເປືອງ ເດືອນ
- 5.10 ເກືອ ເຈື້ອງ ເກື້ອນ ເອືອນ
- 5.11 ເບັ້ງ ເປັ້ງ ເດັ້ງ ເຈັ້ງ ເຈັ້ງ
- 5.12 ອັວ ຕົວ ຈິວ ບິວ ປິວ
- 5.13 ເກືອ ເດື້ອ ເຈື້ອ ເປື້ອ ເປື້ອ

Letter Writing Style

ງ ວ

LESSON 6: Semi-vowels (-w, -y)

Semi-vowels are final letter combinations of a vowel and either w or y (ဝ or ဗ). Semi-vowels are either long or short depending upon the long or short vowels in them. Semi-vowels function as final letters; hence, there can be no other letters following them. Tables listing all the semi-vowels are shown below.

Semi-vowel		ao	ew	aew	iw	iaw
-w	Long form	×၇ဝ	{×ဝ	[[×ဝ	ခိဝ	×၇ဝ
	Short form	{×၇	-	-	ခိဝ	-

Semi-vowel		ai	oy	ohy	iy	uy	ery	uay	euay
-y	Long form	×၇ဗ	၂×ဗ	×၇ဗ	ခိဗ	×ဗ	{ခိဗ	×ဝဗ	{ခိ၇ဗ
	Short form	၇× , ၂×	၂ခိဗ	-	ခိဗ	×ဗ	-	-	-

Note: As in English, the pronunciation of an initial consonant becomes softer when it is used in a final position. Consequently, the pronunciation of the semi-vowel ဝ (as in ဂ၇ဝ) is not exactly the same as the tam consonant ဝ (as in ဝ၇) although its picture is the same. Also the pronunciation of the semi-vowel ဗ (as in ဂ၇ဗ) is not exactly the same as the tam consonant ဗ (as in ဗ၇) although its picture is also the same.

CUMULATIVE TONE CODES	
Tone 1	kang + long vowel kang + short vowel + nasal
Tone 2	any syllable + mai ek
Tone 3	kang + short

TONE PITCH CHART	
3	high
2	mid
1	low

Tone Exercise

6.1	ອາວ	ອາວ	ເອີຍ	ເອີຍ
6.2	ແອວ	ແອວ	ອວຍ	ອວຍ
6.3	ປາຍ	ປາຍ	ເປີອຍ	ເປີອຍ
6.4	ດງວ	ດງວ	ຕິວ	ຕິວ
6.5	ໃບ	ໃບ	ເຕົາ	ເຕົາ
6.6	ໂກ	ໂກ		

Duration Exercise

6.7	ຕາຍ	ໂຕ	ປ່າຍ	ໂປ່
6.8	ບາຍ	ໃບ	ບ່າຍ	ໂບ່
6.9	ປາວ	ເປົາ	ປ່າວ	ເປົ່າ
6.10	ຕາວ	ເຕົາ	ຕ່າວ	ເຕົ່າ

Reading Exercise

6.11	ບາຍ	ໂຕຍ	ອອຍ	ຕູຍ	ຈວຍ	ເດືອຍ
6.12	ອຸຍ	ກຸຍ	ໃຍ	ໂຍ	ໂຕຍ	ໂກຍ
6.13	ດາວ	ແອວ	ກິວ	ດງວ	ຢງວ	ແຈວ
6.14	ປິວ	ເອົາ	ເຍົາ	ເຢົາ	ເຕົາ	ເກົາ

Letter Writing Style

ໃ ໂ ຍ

LESSON 7: tam + long = tone 3
 tam + short = tone 2

This lesson introduces the akson tam consonants (high tone consonants). You already are acquainted with five of these consonants: the three tam consonants which also function as the nasal finals **ɲ, ɳ, ɶ** and the two tam consonants **ɷ** and **ɸ** which also function as semi-vowels. Although there are new tone rules for these consonants, there are no new tones since akson tam consonants are spoken on tone 3 when followed by a long vowel, and on tone 2 when followed by a short vowel. The following table lists the akson tam consonants.

AKSON TAM CONSONANTS

noh ³	ngoh ³	moh ³	yoh ³	woh ³	foh ³	loh ³	loh ³	soh ³	hoh ³	poh ³	toh ³	koh ³
ɲ	ɳ	ɶ	ɷ	ɸ	ɹ	ɺ	ɻ	ɼ	ɽ	ɿ	ʈ	ʡ
NASALS		NOTE A			NOTE B			VOICED				

Note: A. The letter **ɶ** has two pictures of which **ɶ** is the more modern one, used mostly in handwriting, but not yet in printing.

B. Although there are two "loh" letters, the first is called "loh³ lo:t²" and the second "loh³ ling³".

CUMULATIVE TONE CODES	
Tone 1	tam + short + nasal kang + short tam + long
Tone 2	any syllable + mai ek tam + short
Tone 3	kang + long kang + short + nasal

TONE PITCH CHART	
3	<u>high</u>
2	<u>mid</u>
1	<u>low</u>

Duration Exercise

7.1	ຟາ	ຟະ	ວີ	ວີ
7.2	ແງ	ແງະ	ວີ	ວີ
7.3	ນຸ	ນຸ	ໂຍ	ໂຍະ
7.4	ຊໍ	ເຊາະ	ເຍັງ	ເຍັງະ
7.5	ລົວ	ລົວະ	ເຊີ	ເຊີ

Tone Exercise

7.6	ຟ່ອນ	ຟ່ອນ	ຟັງ	ຟັງ
7.7	ແວນ	ແວ່ນ	ວັງ	ວັງ
7.8	ນາງ	ນ່າງ	ຍານ	ຍ່ານ
7.9	ງານ	ງ່ານ	ງິນ	ງິນ
7.10	ແຮງ	ແຮ່ງ	ຮອນ	ຮ່ອນ
7.11	ແລງ	ແລ່ງ	ລິນ	ລິ່ນ
7.12	ຊິນ	ຊິ່ນ	ຊອງ	ຊ່ອງ

Reading Exercise

7.13	ໄຟ	ວຽງ	ນ່ວນ	ເນົາ	ແນວ
7.14	ໃນ	ນາຍ	ເນືອງ	ຍວນ	ຍຸ
7.15	ຍາວ	ງ່າຍ	ໂງ່	ຮຽນ	ຮວນ
7.16	ລາວ	ລິດ	ຊາຍ	ຊ່ວຍ	ຟ່ອຍ

7.17	ຟາ	ຟູ	ເຟືອ	ຜີ	ແຜ
7.18	ຜີ	ນາ	ນີ	ແນ	ເນັງ
7.19	ເນືອ	ນາ	ເນ	ໂນ	ເນີ
7.20	ນົວ	ຫາ	ຍໍ	ເຍັງ	ງາ
7.21	ູ່	ງົວ	ແຮ	ເຮືອ	ຮູ
7.22	ຮາ	ໂຮ	ເຮ	ລາ	ລື
7.23	ລົວ	ເລືອ	ເລັງ	ຊາ	ເຊ
7.24	ແຊ	ຊີ			

Letter Writing Style: Tam Consonants

ຟ ຮ ລ ຊ ຮ
 ພ ຫ ຄ
 ນ ງ ມ ວ ຍ

LESSON 8: sung + long = tone 4
 sung + short = tone 3

3	
2	
1	4 ✓ rising tone

The new tone introduced in this lesson tone 4, is a low rising tone. It is coded when an akson sung consonant (or rising tone consonant introduced below) is combined with a long vowel. The akson sung consonants have the same sounds as the akson tam consonants; however, akson sung consonants are spoken on tone 4, whereas the akson tam are spoken on tone 3. Each is lowered one tone when used with a short vowel.

When combined with short vowels, akson sung syllables are spoken on tone 3. Most of the akson sung consonants are prefixed or combined with the sung consonant 𑜀 as shown in the table below.

AKSON SUNG CONSONANTS


Sung consonants	hoh ⁴ woh ⁴ ngoh ⁴	loh ⁴	loh ⁴ moh ⁴ noh ⁴	nyoh ⁴	foh ⁴ soh ⁴ poh ⁴ toh ⁴ koh ⁴
	𑜀 𑜀𑜁 𑜀𑜂	𑜀𑜃 𑜀𑜄	𑜀𑜅 𑜀𑜆	𑜀𑜇 𑜀𑜈	𑜀𑜉 𑜀𑜊 𑜀𑜋 𑜀𑜌 𑜀𑜍
	NOTE A			NOTE B	
Similar tam letter	𑜀 𑜁 𑜂	𑜃 𑜄	𑜅 𑜆 𑜇 𑜈	𑜉 𑜊 𑜋 𑜌 𑜍	

- Note: A. 𑜀𑜃 is the preferred picture today over its old picture 𑜀𑜃𑜂.
 B. 𑜀𑜇 is the preferred picture today, but its old picture 𑜀𑜇𑜂 also still used.

Having studied all the consonants now, the following tone code generalization can be made about short vowels: they raise the tone of syllables with low consonants (kang and sung) to high tone 3, and they lower the tone of high consonants (tam) to mid tone 2.

CUMULATIVE TONE CODES	
Tone 1	kang + long kang + short + nasal
Tone 2	any syllable + mai ek tam + short kang + short
Tone 3	tam + long tam + short + nasal sung + short
Tone 4	sung + long sung + short + nasal

TONE PITCH CHART	
3	<u>high</u>
2	<u>mid</u>
1	<u>low</u>



Duration Exercise

8.1	ຫາ	ຫະ	ເຫງ	ເຫງະ
8.2	ສໍ	ເສາະ	ສຸ	ສຸ
8.3	ສີ	ສີ	ຫີ	ຫີ

Tone Exercise

8.4	ຟາ	ຜາ	ເືອ	ເືອ
8.5	ວານ	ຫວານ	ວິ	ຫວິ
8.6	ນີ	ສີ	ນອນ	ນອນ
8.7	ຍັງ	ຫຍັງ	ເວົາ	ເຫຍົາ
8.8	ຮຸ	ທູ	ໂຫ	ໂຮ
8.9	ລາວ	ຫຼາວ	ສາຍ	ຊາຍ
8.10	ເສົາ	ເຊົາ	ເສີນ	ເຊີນ

8.11	ເນາະ	ເກາະ	ແຂະ	ແຂະ
8.12	ວະ	ຫວະ	ສະ	ຊະ
8.13	ຫວານ	ຫວ່ານ	ໄໝ	ໄໝ່
8.14	ຫໍ່	ຫໍ່	ຫວຽງ	ຫວຽງ
8.15	ຫງຸນ	ຫງຸນ	ຫາ	ຫາ
8.16	ຫໍ່	ຫໍ່	ເຫົາ	ເຫົາ
8.17	ຫຼັງ	ຫຼັງ	ຫໍ່	ຫໍ່
8.18	ໄສ	ໄສ່	ສອງ	ສອງ
8.19	ສິວ	ສິວ	ເສົາ	ເສົາ

Reading Exercise

8.20	ຝາ	ຫວີ	ໝູ	ເໝ	ເໝງ
8.21	ຫງີ	ຫງີ	ຫໍ່	ເສັງ	ສໍ່
8.22	ເຜີ	ໝາ	ເຜີ້	ຫໍ່	ເຜີ້
8.23	ສາ	ສີ	ຫຼາ	ຫີ	ຫີວ

ຝ ສ ພ ຄ 2

ຫ ຫວ ຫງ ຫຣ

ຫຼ ຫໝ ຫຍ

LESSON 9: Aspirants (k, t, p) and non-aspirants (g, dt, bp)

In each of the akson tam and akson sung consonant groups there are three aspirated consonants (p, t and k) which are spoken on tone 3 and tone 4 respectively. They differ from akson kang consonants because kang consonants are spoken on tone 1 and because kang consonants are not aspirated. Be sure to avoid aspiration when saying akson kang consonants, and be sure to pronounce aspiration clearly when saying tam or sung consonants. The following table lists the main aspirated and unaspirated consonants.

Aspirated letters						Unaspirated letters		
Tam			Sung			Kang		
koh ³	toh ³	poh ³	koh ⁴	toh ⁴	poh ⁴	goh ¹	dtoh ¹	bpoh ¹
ᵇ	ᵇ	ᵇ	ᵇ	ᵇ	ᵇ	ᵇ	ᵇ	ᵇ

Note: For a discussion of aspiration, see page 164.

CUMULATIVE TONE CODES	
Tone 1	kang + long kang + short + nasal
Tone 2	any syllable + mai ek tam + short
Tone 3	kang + short tam + long tam + short + nasal sung + short
Tone 4	sung + long sung + short + nasal

TONE PITCH CHART	
3	<u>high</u>
2	<u>mid</u>
1	<u>low</u>
	4 ✓ rising

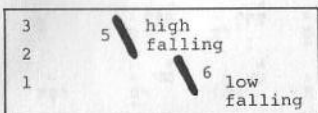
Tone Exercise

9.1	າ	ຂາ	ຄງ	ຂງ	ໄ	ໄຂ
9.2	ົວ	ຂົວ	ົ	ຂົ	ໂ	ໂຂ
9.3	ູ	ູ	ງ	ງ	ໄ	ໄ
9.4	າມ	າມ	ເົາ	ເົາ	ະ	ະ
9.5	ື	ື	ົມ	ົມ	ໄ	ໄ
9.6	ເຜງ	ເຜງ	ຸ	ຸ	ົວ	ົວ

Contrast Exercise

9.7	ເກ	ແ	ົກ	ົ	ກວ	ຄວ
9.8	ໂ	ໂ	ກົມ	ຄົມ	ົກ	ົ
9.9	ຕາ	ຫາ	ໂ	ໂ	ຕາຍ	ຫາຍ
9.10	ເົ	ເົ	ົ້	ົ້	ົວ	ົວ
9.11	ູ	ູ	ໄ	ໄ	ປາຍ	ພາຍ
9.12	ປະ	ພະ	ແ່	ແ່	ປົວ	ພົວ
9.13	ົ	ຸ	ໂ	ົ	ົ	
9.14	ົດ	ກົດ	ົດ	ົດ	ົດ	ົດ
9.15	ູ	ົດ	ົດ	ົດ	ົດ	ົດ

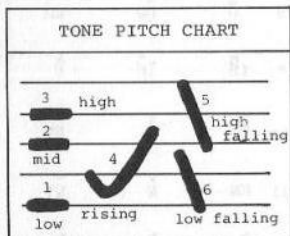
LESSON 10: mai to + kang = tone 5
 mai to + tam = tone 5
 mai to + sung = tone 6



The last two new tones are falling tones: tone 5 is high falling, and tone 6 is low falling. Tone 5 is coded by a mai to on any syllable beginning with an akson kang or akson tam consonant. Tone 6 is coded by a mai to on any akson sung syllable.

A mai to is a tone mark which looks like the number 2 with a long tail (x). It is written above the initial consonant of a syllable. The drills in this lesson are designed to help you learn to hear the new tones introduced here (tone 5 and tone 6).

CUMULATIVE TONE CODES	
Tone 1	kang + long kang + short + nasal
Tone 2	any syllable + mai ek tam + short
Tone 3	kang + short tam + long tam + short + nasal sung + short
Tone 4	sung + long sung + short + nasal
Tone 5	kang + mai to tam + mai to
Tone 6	sung + mai to



Tone Exercise

10.1 ກາງ ຂາງ

10.2 ທອນ ຕອນ

10.3 ເທິງ ເຖິງ

10.4 ການ ຂານ

10.5 ຄວນ ຂວນ

ຂາງ	ສາງ
ນອນ	ທອນ
ຖອນ	ສອນ
ເລືອກ	ເຫຼືອ
ຍຸນ	ຫຼຸນ

Reading Exercise

10.6 ອາ ເອ ອ້ ເອ້ ອີ້

10.7 ເຍ ບ ເຍຍ ປ ໄປ

10.8 ດີ ດວ ແຕ ເຕ້ ກາ

10.9 ເກີ ໄປ ຢີ້ ໄຈ ເຈ້ງ

10.10 ກາ ກິ ທາ ເຫ ພາ

10.11 ແພ ພ ພາ ແວ ວ

10.12 ນີ້ ນ ນາ ເນ ຍ

10.13 ຫຼີ ງາ ງວ ຣ ເຮ້ງ

10.14 ລາ ລ ລູ ເລ້ງ ລູ

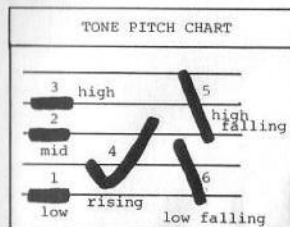
LESSON 11: Stops (-k, -t, -p) kang + long + stop = tone 6
 sung + long + stop = tone 5
 tam + long + stop = tone 5

Stops are unreleased final consonants. There are only three final final sounds: k, t and p. Although there are many Lao consonants which can be written as final letters, they are all pronounced as one of the three final sounds. The following table lists the common and variant written forms of stops:

Pronunciation	Common written form	Variant written forms
k	ก	ค ฆ
t	ก	จ ฎ ฏ ฏ ฏ ฏ
p	ป	ป ฝ ฝ

Stops only influence the tone codes of syllables with long vowels so that they are spoken with falling tone instead of level tones. Syllables coded with tam consonants and long vowels are spoken with a high falling tone (tone 5); syllables with kang or sung consonants and long vowels are spoken with a low falling tone (tone 6). The tones of syllables with short vowels are unaffected by the presence of a final stop.

COMPLETE TONE DETERMINATION CODE					
Consonant group \ Vowel and tone mark	Long or Long+ nasal or Short Short nasal	Short or Short+ stop	Long +stop	Tone mark	
				mai ek	mai to
Kang group	1	3	6	2	5
Tam group	3	2	5	2	5
Sung group	4	3	6	2	6



Tone Exercise

11.1	ຄອບ	ຂອບ	ທາດ	ຖາດ
11.2	ແມດ	ແສດ	ຝາກ	ຜ້າກ
11.3	ໂວກ	ໂຫວກ	ນອບ	ໜອບ
11.4	ນາດ	ໜາດ	ຍາບ	ຫງາຍ
11.5	ໂງກ	ໂຫງກ	ຮິບ	ຫິບ
11.6	ລູບ	ຫລູບ	ແຊຍ	ແສຍ
11.7	ຊາຍ	ສາຍ	ລາຍ	ຫາຍ
11.8	ສິດ	ຂິດ	ຄັຍ	ຂັຍ
11.9	ຫິຫ	ຖິກ	ພິດ	ຜິດ
11.10	ຝິດ	ຜິດ	ວັດ	ຫວັດ
11.11	ນັດ	ຫັດ	ນິດ	ຫິດ
11.12	ນັກ	ຫັກ	ຢຸດ	ຫລຸດ
11.13	ງູບ	ຫງູບ	ຮົກ	ຫົກ
11.14	ເຮັດ	ເຫັດ	ເລັກ	ເຫຼັກ
11.15	ຊັກ	ສັກ	ຊິດ	ສິດ

Contrast Exercise

11.16	ອາດ	ອາກ	ອາຍ	ແຍດ	ແຍກ	ແຍຍ
11.17	ເສິດ	ເສິກ	ເສິຍ	ສາດ	ສາກ	ສາຍ
11.18	ຮາດ	ຮາກ	ຮາຍ	ໂງດ	ໂງກ	ໂງຍ
11.19	ກັດ	ກັກ	ກັຍ	ຂັດ	ຂັກ	ຂັຍ
11.20	ຄັດ	ຄັກ	ຄັຍ			

Reading Exercise

11.21	ອີກ	ອອກ	ອາຍ	ບອກ	ແບບ	ຢາກ
11.22	ແປດ	ດອກ	ແດດ	ຕາກ	ຕອບ	ກີກ
11.23	ກອກ	ເກີດ	ກິຍ	ຢາກ	ຢອດ	ຈອກ
11.24	ຈາກ	ຈອດ	ໄປດ	ດດ	ເອດ	ບາດ
11.25	ອັດ	ອິດ	ຍັກ	ຍິດ	ປຸກ	ເປັດ
11.26	ເດັກ	ດິຍ	ຕຶກ	ຕັດ	ຕົກ	ກົກ
11.27	ກັຍ	ຢຸດ	ຈັດ	ເຈັດ	ເຈັຍ	ຈິຍ

11.28	ກະ	ກິ	ກຸ	ຂະ	ຂຸ	ລະ
11.29	ສິ	ສຸ	ໂສະ	ໂສະ	ສິ	ກິ
11.30	ກັດ	ກາ	ກິດ	ກິດ	ຂັກ	ຂັດ
11.31	ຂາ	ຄັດ	ຄັກ	ສິດ	ສິກ	ສິດ

1. Consonant clusters are initial letters composed of an initial consonant and the tam consonant ຈ. They are pronounced as one sound unit and follow the same tone code rules as their initial letters. The following are a list of the most common consonant clusters in Lao:

COMMON CONSONANT CLUSTERS

	w-	gw-	chw-			
kang	ກວ	ກວ	ຈວ			
	kw-	tw-	ngw-	hw-	lw-	sw-
tam	ກຈ	ທຈ	ງຈ	ສຈ	ລຈ	ຊຈ
	kw-	sw-				
sung	ຂຈ	ສຈ				

2. Many polysyllabic words in Lao omit writing the vowel າ from one of their syllables; thus, they give the appearance of beginning with a consonant cluster except that they do not involve the letter "ຈ". In addition, they are not pronounced as one sound unit. Instead, they are spoken as if the short vowel were written between the two consonants as shown in the following examples:

	Written form	Pronounced form	First consonant of each syllable
a.	ກລາ	ka:la (ກະລາ)	tam tam
b.	ຂຍາຍ	ka:nyai (ຂະຍາຍ)	sung tam
c.	ດລາດ	dta:lat (ຕະລາດ)	kang tam
d.	ສຍາຍ	sa:bai (ສະຍາຍ)	sung kang

Note: Some polysyllabic words have a special tone code. If only the second letter is tam, as in examples b and c above, then the second syllable is spoken on the tone as if it began with an akson sung letter as shown with the same examples b and c below.

Monosyllabic tone coding Polysyllabic tone coding

b.	ka ³ nya ³	ka ³ nyao ⁴
c.	ta ³ lat ⁵	dta ³ lat ⁶

Reading Exercise

12.1 ອວ່າຍ ອວານ ກວາ ກວາງ ຈວານ

12.2 ຄວ່າ ຄວາມ ຄວັນ ໂຄວ ແຄວກ

12.3 ຫວາຍ ງວາກ ຮວາຍ ຮວ່າຍ ລວາ

12.4 ຊວ່າມ ຊວາງ ຂວາ ຂວນ໌ ໂຂວ

12.5 ດວາຍ ສວ່າງ ສວາຍ

12.6 ປໂຍດ ຂຍາຍ ຂນາດ ຂເນນ

12.7 ດຸນອນ ດແລງ ດວິນ ດຍາ

12.8 ດຸນິນ ດເຍກ ດລິດ ດງວນ

12.9 ສຍານ ສມານ ສລາດ ສມານ

12.10 ສງົບ ສນັກ ສຣະ ສນັຍ

12.11 ຄົມນາ ພົມວິຫານ ກາຍບໍຣິຫານ

12.12 ສິລປະການ ກຸລຊົນ ຈຸລຸພົນ

12.13 ພິລເກືອງ ກະເສດຫັນ ກິຈການ

12.14 ເທສຍານ ສາສນາ ປະຄົມເທສນາ

12.15 ພິພິທັພັນ ວັຈນານຸກົມ ວິທຍຸ

12.16 ວັທນາ ອຸປກອນ ສີປດາ

Lao Place Names Exercise

12.17	ນ້ຳຫາ	ຜັງສາລີ	ຫວຍຊາຍ
12.18	ໂຂຍະບຸຣີ	ຫຼວງພຣະບາງ	ຊຳເໜືອ
12.19	ວຽງຈັນ	ຊຽງຂວາງ	ປາກຊັນ
12.20	ບໍຣິຄັມ	ຄຳມ່ວນ	ທ່າແຂກ
12.21	ສວັນນະເຂດ	ຈິງເຊໂດນ	ສາຣະວັນ
12.22	ປາກເຊ	ຈຳປາສັກ	ອັດປີ
12.23	ໂຂງ	ແນ້ນ້ຳຂອງ	ນ້ຳອູ
12.24	ນ້ຳຈຸ້ນ	ນ້ຳກະດິງ	ເຊຍັງໄຟ
12.25	ເຊຍັງຫຼວງ	ເຊໂດນ	ຕລາດເຊ້າ
12.26	ຕລາດແລງ	ຖນົມລ້ານຊ້າງ	ຖນົມສານແສນໄທ
12.27	ຖນົມເຊດຖາທິຣາດ	ທາດຫຼວງ	ວັດອິນແປງ
12.28	ທາດຂາວ	ຈີ່ນາຍໄມ້	ທ່າເຕື້ອ
12.29	ວັດອົງຕີ້	ອະນຸສາວະຣີ	ສນານກິລາ
12.30	ເຕີ້ນບົນ	ສີໂຄ	ວັດໂຕ
12.31	ສີຕຸນ	ປາກປາສັກ	ສີທອນ
12.32	ເຈົ້າອານຸ	ສາຍລົມ	ນາໂຮ່ດຽວ
12.33	ສີເນືອງ	ໄໝນໂຊ	ໜອງບອນ

Phonetic Equivalents to the Exercises in PART 3

Lesson 1

1.1	a ¹	i ¹	ae ¹	e ¹	
1.2	oh ¹	o ¹	u ¹	eu ¹	
1.3	er ¹	eu ¹	u ¹	o ¹	
1.4	i ¹	a ¹	i ¹	e ¹	u ¹
1.5	o ¹	ae ¹	eu ¹	er ¹	oh ¹
1.6	e ¹	a ¹	er ¹	ae ¹	i ¹
1.7	u ¹	oh ¹	eu ¹	o ¹	e ¹

Lesson 2

2.1	ba ¹	bpa ¹	da ¹	dta ¹
2.2	bi ¹	bpi ¹	de ¹	dte ¹
2.3	be ¹	bpe ¹	dtu ¹	du ¹
2.4	bo ¹	bpo ¹	doh ¹	dtoh ¹
2.5	ber ¹	bper ¹		
2.6	boh ¹	boh ²	da ¹	da ²
2.7	bpu ¹	bpu ²	gae ¹	gae ²
2.8	ya ¹	ya ²	cheu ¹	cheu ²
2.9	dtoh ¹	dtoh ²	go ¹	go ²
2.10	a ¹	da ¹	bpa ¹	
2.11	dti ¹	chi ¹	gi ¹	
2.12	be ¹	bpe ¹	de ¹	
2.13	beu ¹	keu ¹	cheu ¹	
2.14	bpu ¹	dtu ¹	u ¹	
2.15	chae ¹	dae ¹	gae ¹	
2.16	er ¹	ber ¹	dter ¹	
2.17	bpo ¹	do ¹	go ¹	
2.18	yoh ¹	boh ¹	choh ¹	

Lesson 3

3.1	a: ³	a ¹	bi ¹	bi: ³
3.2	dte: ³	dte ¹	gae ¹	gae: ³
3.3	dtoh: ³	dtoh ¹	bpu ¹	bpu: ³
3.4	ger: ³	ger ¹		
3.5	chi ¹	chi ²	chi: ³	dta ¹ dta: ² dta: ³
3.6	boh ¹	boh ²	boh: ³	do ¹ do: ² do: ³
3.7	u ¹	u ²	u: ³	eu ¹ eu: ² eu: ³
3.8	bpa: ¹	bpa: ²	bpa: ³	e ¹ e: ² e: ³
3.9	ger ¹	ger ²	ger: ³	
3.10	a: ³	bi: ³	be: ³	bpa: ³ du: ³
3.11	eu: ³	do: ³	dtoh: ³	ger: ³ cha: ³
3.12	yo: ³	yu: ³	da: ³	dte: ³ cher: ³
3.13	oh: ³	dte: ³	ga: ³	chu: ³ dteu: ³

Lesson 4

4.1	dtang ¹	dtan ¹	dan ¹	dam ¹		
4.2	gang ¹	gan ¹	chan ¹	cham ¹		
4.3	yang ¹	yan ¹	bpan ¹	bpam ¹		
4.4	bang ¹	bā:n ¹	chang ¹	cha:n ¹		
4.5	an ¹	a:n ¹	gan ¹	ga:n ¹		
4.6	dtam ¹	đta:m ¹	cham ¹	cha:m ¹		
4.7	ong ¹	aen ¹	ohm ¹	eu:ng ¹	i:n ¹	o:m ¹
4.8	ang ²	en ²	ohm ²	o:ng ²	u:n ²	a:m ²
4.9	bang ¹	ban ¹	bom ¹	be:ng ¹	bi:n ¹	ba:m ¹
4.10	baeng ²	bohn ²	bem ²	bo:ng ²	bi:n ²	ba:m ²
4.11	bpohng ¹	bpan ¹	bpom ¹	bpu:ng ¹	bpe:n ¹	bpo:m ¹
4.12	bpeng ²	bpern ²	bpam ²	bpo:ng ²	bpi:n ²	bpu:m ²
4.13	daeng ¹	dern ¹	dohm ¹	deu:ng ¹	do:n ¹	da:m ¹
4.14	dang ²	dern ²	đam ²	do:ng ²	da:n ²	deu:m ²
4.15	dtohng ¹	dtohn ¹	dtam ¹	dte:ng ¹	dti:n ¹	dtam ¹
4.16	dtang ²	dteun ²	đtohm ²	dta:ng ²	dtu:n ²	dtam ²
4.17	gohng ¹	gen ¹	gaem ¹	gu:ng ¹	gā:n ¹	geu:m ¹
4.18	gaeng ²	gohn ²	gom ²	ga:ng ²	gā:n ²	gam ²
4.19	yong ¹	yeun ¹	yeum ¹	ya:ng ¹	ya:n ¹	ya:m ¹
4.20	yang ²	yohn ²	yeum ²	ya:ng ²	ya:n ²	ya:m ²
4.21	cher:ng ¹	chīn ¹	chohm ¹	che:ng ¹	chu:n ¹	cha:m ¹
4.22	chaeng ²	chern ²	cham ²	cheu:ng ²	cho:n ²	cha:m ²

Lesson 5

5.1	bpia ¹	bpia: ³	deua ¹	deua: ³		
5.2	dtua ¹	đtua: ³				
5.3	beua ¹	beua ²	chua ¹	chua ²		
5.4	ian ¹	ian ²	giang ¹	giang ²		
5.5	ian ¹	biang ²	bpia ¹	diam ¹		
5.6	dtian ¹	giang ²	chia ²	chiam ¹		
5.7	ua ²	bua ²	bpuang ¹	duan ²		
5.8	dtuang ¹	guan ¹	yuang ²	chua ¹		
5.9	euan ¹	beua ²	bpeuang ¹	deuan ¹		
5.10	geua ¹	cheuang ²	geuan ²	euam ¹		
5.11	bia ¹	bpia ¹	dia ¹	chia ¹	chia ²	
5.12	ua ²	dtua ¹	chua ²	bua ¹	bpua ¹	
5.13	geua ¹	deua ²	cheua ¹	beua ¹	beua ²	

Lesson 6

6.1	ao ¹	ao ²	ery ¹	ery ²		
6.2	aeo ¹	aeo ²	uay ¹	uay ²		
6.3	bpai ¹	bpai ²	bpeuay ¹	bpeuay ²		
6.4	diaw ¹	diaw ²	dtiw ¹	dtiw ²		
6.5	bai: ¹	bai: ²	dtao: ¹	dtao: ²		
6.6	gai: ¹	gai: ²				
6.7	dtai ¹	dtai: ¹	bpai ²	bpai: ²		
6.8	bai ¹	bai: ¹	bai ²	bai: ²		
6.9	bpao ¹	bpao: ¹	bpao ²	bpao: ²		
6.10	dtao ¹	dtao: ¹	dtao ²	dtao: ²		
6.11	bai ¹	doy ¹	ohy ¹	dtui ¹	chuay ¹	deuay ¹
6.12	ui ¹	gui ¹	bai: ¹	bpai: ¹	dtai: ¹	gai: ¹
6.13	dao ¹	aew ¹	giw ¹	diaw ¹	yiaw ¹	chaew ¹
6.14	piw: ¹	ao: ¹	bao: ¹	yao: ¹	dtao: ¹	gao: ¹

Lesson 7

7.1	fa ³	fa: ²	wi ³	wi: ²		
7.2	ngae ³	ngae: ²	weu ³	weu: ²		
7.3	mu ³	mu: ²	nyo ³	nyo: ²		
7.4	soh ³	soh: ²	nyia ³	nyia: ²		
7.5	lua ³	lua: ²	ser ³	ser: ²		
7.6	fohn ³	fohn: ²	fa:ng ³	fa:ng: ²		
7.7	waen ³	waen: ²	wa:ng ³	wa:ng: ²		
7.8	mang ³	mang: ²	nyan ³	nyan: ²		
7.9	ngam ³	ngam: ²	ngeu:m ³	ngeu:m: ²		
7.10	haeng ³	haeng: ²	hohm ³	hohm: ²		
7.11	laeng ³	laeng: ²	li:n ³	li:n: ²		
7.12	seu:m ³	seu:m: ²	soh:ng ³	soh:ng: ²		
7.13	fai: ³	wiang ³	muan ²	mao: ³	maeo ³	
7.14	nai: ³	nai ³	neuang ³	nyuan ³	nyui ³	
7.15	nyao ³	ngai ²	ngai: ²	hian ³	huam ²	
7.16	lao ³	li:w ³	sai ³	suai ²	fohi ³	
7.17	fa ³	fu ³	feua ³	wi ³	wae ³	
7.18	wi ³	ma ³	mi ³	mae ³	mia ³	
7.19	meua ³	na ³	ne ³	no ³	ner ³	
7.20	nua ³	nya ³	nyoh ³	nyia ³	nga ³	
7.21	ngu ³	ngua ³	hae ³	heua ³	hu ³	
7.22	la ³	lo ³	le ³	la ³	leu ³	
7.23	lua ³	leua ³	lia ³	sa ³	se ³	
7.24	sae ³	si ³				

Lesson 8

8.1	ha ⁴	ha: ³	ngae ⁴	ngae: ³		
8.2	so ⁴	so: ³	su ⁴	su: ³		
8.3	si ⁴	si: ³	heu ⁴	heu: ³		
8.4	fa: ³	fa ⁴	feua: ³	feua ⁴		
8.5	wan: ³	wan ⁴	wi: ³	wi ⁴		
8.6	mi: ³	mi ⁴	nohn: ³	nohn ⁴		
8.7	nya:ng ³	nya:ng ⁴	ngao: ³	ngao: ⁴		
8.8	hu: ³	hu ⁴	hai: ⁴	hai: ³		
8.9	lao: ³	lao ⁴	sai ⁴	sai: ³		
8.10	sao: ⁴	sao: ³	sern ⁴	sern: ³		
8.11	moh: ²	moh: ³	sae: ³	sae: ²		
8.12	wa: ²	wa: ³	sa: ³	sa: ²		
8.13	wan ⁴	wan: ²	mai: ⁴	mai: ²		
8.14	noh ⁴	noh: ²	niang ⁴	niang: ²		
8.15	ngu:m ⁴	ngu:m: ²	ha ⁴	ha: ²		
8.16	hoh ⁴	hoh: ²	hao: ⁴	hao: ²		
8.17	la:ng ⁴	la:ng: ²	loh ⁴	loh: ²		
8.18	sai: ⁴	sai: ²	sohng ⁴	sohng: ²		
8.19	siw ⁴	siw: ²	sao: ⁴	sao: ²		
8.20	fa ⁴	wi ⁴	mu ⁴	nae ⁴	haeng ⁴	
8.21	ngi ⁴	heu ⁴	loh ⁴	se:ng ⁴	soh ⁴	
8.22	fer ⁴	na ⁴	neua ⁴	hoh ⁴	leua ⁴	
8.23	sa ⁴	si ⁴	la ⁴	ni ⁴	hua ⁴	

Lesson 9

9.1	ka: ³	ka ⁴	kiang: ³	kiang ⁴	kai: ³	kai: ⁴
9.2	kua: ³	kua ⁴	ki: ²	ki: ³	koh: ²	koh: ³
9.3	tu: ³	tu ⁴	tohng: ³	tohng ⁴	tai: ³	tai: ⁴
9.4	tam: ³	tam ⁴	tao: ³	tao: ⁴	ta: ²	ta: ³
9.5	pi: ³	pi ⁴	po:m: ³	po:m ⁴	pai: ³	pai: ⁴
9.6	paeng: ³	paeng ⁴	pu: ²	pu: ³	pua: ³	pua ⁴
9.7	gae: ¹	kae: ³	goh: ¹	kob: ³	giaw: ¹	kiaw: ³
9.8	go: ¹	ko: ²	gohn: ²	kohn: ²	gai: ²	kai: ²
9.9	dta: ¹	ta: ³	dtai: ¹	tai: ³	dtai: ¹	tai: ³
9.10	dter: ¹	ter: ²	dti: ²	ti: ²	dtiaw: ²	tiaw: ²
9.11	bpu: ¹	pu: ³	bpai: ¹	pai: ³	bpai: ¹	pai: ³
9.12	bpa: ³	pha: ²	bpae: ²	pae: ²	bpuang: ²	puang: ²
9.13	keu: ²	ku: ²	ko: ²	go: ³	ki: ²	gi: ³
9.14	gait: ³	gu:k: ³	go:t: ³	gi:t: ³	ka:k: ³	ka:t: ³
9.15	ku:k: ³	ka:t: ²	ka:k: ²	ki:t: ²	keu:k: ²	ko:t: ²

Lesson 10

10.1	kang ⁵	kang ⁶	sang ⁵	sang ⁶	
10.2	tohn ⁵	tohn ⁶	mo:n ⁵	mo:n ⁶	
10.3	terng ⁵	terng ⁶	sohm ⁵	sohm ⁶	
10.4	kam ⁵	kam ⁶	leuang ⁵	leuang ⁶	
10.5	kuan ⁵	kuan ⁶	nyu:m ⁵	nyu:m ⁶	
10.6	a ⁵	ae ⁵	eu ⁵	eua ⁵	eu ⁵
10.7	be ⁵	boh ⁵	bia ⁵	bpu ⁵	bpo ⁵
10.8	di ⁵	dua ⁵	dtae ⁵	dtia ⁵	ga ⁵
10.9	ger ⁵	yo ⁵	yeu ⁵	cho ⁵	chia ⁵
10.10	ka ⁵	koh ⁵	ta ⁵	tae ⁵	pa ⁵
10.11	pae ⁵	poh ⁵	fa ⁵	wae ⁵	woh ⁵
10.12	meu ⁵	moh ⁵	na ⁵	nae ⁵	nyoh ⁵
10.13	nyu ⁵	nga ⁵	ngua ⁵	hu ⁵	heua ⁵
10.14	la ⁵	loh ⁵	si ⁵	ser ⁵	seu ⁵
10.15	koh ⁶	ki ⁶	ta ⁶	pa ⁶	pu ⁶
10.16	fa ⁶	wa ⁶	la ⁶	seua ⁶	hoh ⁶
10.17	na ⁶	ha ⁶	hiw ⁶	soh ⁶	na ⁶
10.18	heua ⁶	nyoh ⁶	nye ⁶	kae ⁶	sa ⁶
10.19	tao ⁵	kohy ⁶	sao: ⁶	dtai: ⁵	chao: ⁵
10.20	wao: ⁵	kai: ⁶	mao: ⁶	dtai ⁵	hai: ⁶
10.21	sai: ⁵	euay ⁵	pao ⁵	mai ⁵	nyaw ⁵
10.22	gai: ⁵	yao ⁵	tai ⁵	tuay ⁶	dao: ⁵
10.23	ngaew ⁵	luay ⁶	bpiaw ⁵	fao ⁵	kaew ⁶

Lesson 11

11.1	kohp ⁵	kohp ⁶	tat ⁵	tat ⁶	
11.2	paet ⁵	paet ⁶	fak ⁵	fak ⁶	
11.3	wok ⁵	wok ⁶	mohp ⁵	mohp ⁶	
11.4	nat ⁵	nat ⁶	nyap ⁵	nyap ⁶	
11.5	ngok ⁵	ngok ⁶	hip ⁵	hip ⁶	
11.6	lup ⁵	lup ⁶	saep ⁵	saep ⁶	
11.7	sap ⁵	sap ⁶	lap ⁵	lap ⁶	
11.8	ki:t ²	ki:t ³	ka:p ²	ka:p ³	
11.9	teu:k ²	teu:k ³	pi:t ²	pi:t ³	
11.10	fo:t ²	fo:t ³	wa:t ²	wa:t ³	
11.11	ma:t ²	ma:t ³	mo:t ²	mo:t ³	
11.12	na:k ²	na:k ³	yu:t ²	yu:t ³	
11.13	ngu:p ²	ngu:p ³	ho:k ²	ho:k ³	
11.14	he:t ²	he:t ³	le:k ²	le:k ³	
11.15	sa:k ²	sa:k ³	si:t ²	si:t ³	

11.16	at ⁶	ak ⁶	ap ⁶	baet ⁶	baek ⁶	baep ⁶
11.17	sert ⁶	serk ⁶	serp ⁶	sat ⁶	sak ⁶	sap ⁶
11.18	hat ⁵	hak ⁵	hap ⁵	ngot ⁵	ngok ⁵	ngop ⁵
11.19	ga:t ³	ga:k ³	ga:p ³	ka:t ³	ka:k ³	ka:p ³
11.20	ka:t ²	ka:k ²	ka:p ²			
11.21	ik ⁶	ohk ⁶	ap ⁶	boh ⁶	baep ⁶	bpak ⁶
11.22	bpaet ⁶	dohk ⁶	daet ⁶	dtak ⁶	dtohp ⁶	geuk ⁶
11.23	gohk ⁶	gert ⁶	gip ⁶	yak ⁶	yoht ⁶	chohk ⁶
11.24	chak ⁶	choht ⁶	bpot ⁶	dut ⁶	et ⁶	bat ⁶
11.25	a:t ³	o:t ³	baik ³	bo:t ³	bpu:k ³	bpe:t ³
11.26	de:k ³	di:p ³	đteu:k ³	dta:t ³	dto:k ³	go:k ³
11.27	ga:p ³	yu:t ³	cha:t ³	che:t ³	che:p ³	cho:p ³
11.28	ga ³	gi ³	gu ³	ka ³	ku ³	ka ²
11.29	keu: ²	ku: ²	ko: ²	go: ³	ki: ²	gi: ³
11.30	ga:t ³	gu:k ³	go:t ³	gi:t ³	ka:k ³	ka:t ³
11.31	ku:k ³	ka:t ²	ka:k ²	ki:t ²	keu:k ²	ko:t ²

Lesson 12

12.1	wai ²	wan ¹	gwa ¹	gwang ¹	chwai ⁶	
12.2	kwa ⁵	kwam ³	kwa:n ³	kwai: ³	kwaek ⁵	
12.3	twai ³	ngwak ⁵	hwai ³	hwai ⁵	lwa ³	
12.4	swan ²	swang ³	kwa ⁴	kwa:n ⁶	kwai: ⁴	
12.5	twai ⁴	swang ²	swai ⁴			
12.6	bpa: ³ nyoht ⁶	ka: ³ nyai ⁴	ka: ³ nat ⁶	ka: ³ men ⁴		
12.7	ta: ³ nohm ⁴	ta: ³ laeng ⁴	ta: ³ wi:n ⁴	pa: ³ nya ⁴		
12.8	ta: ³ no:n ⁴	pa: ³ nyaek ⁶	pa: ³ li:t ³	sa: ³ nguan ⁴		
12.9	sa: ³ nyam ⁴	sa: ³ nam ⁴	sa: ³ lat ⁶	sa: ³ man ⁴		
12.10	sa: ³ ngo:p ³	sa: ³ na:k ³	sa: ³ la: ³	sa: ³ mai ⁴		
12.11	ko:m ³ ma: ² na ³	po:m ³ ma: ² wi: ² han ⁴	gai ¹ nya: ² boh ¹ li: ² han ⁴			
12.12	si:n ⁴ la: ² pa: ³ gan ¹	gu:n ¹ la: ² so:n ³	chu:n ¹ la: ² po:n ³			
12.13	po:n ³ la: ² meuang ³	ga: ³ set ⁶ ta: ³ ga:n ¹	gi:t ³ cha: ³ gan ¹			
12.14	tet ⁵ sa: ³ ban ¹	sat ⁶ sa: ³ na ³	bpa: ³ to:m ⁴ tet ⁶ sa: ³ na ³			
12.15	pi: ³ pi:t ² ta: ² pa:n ³	wa:t ² cha: ³ nai: ³ nu: ²	wi:t ² ta ¹ nyu ²			
12.16	wa:t ² ta: ² na ³	u:p ³ bpa: ² kohn ³	sa:p ³ bpa: ³ da ¹			
12.17	na:m ⁵ ta ³	po:ng ⁶ sa ⁴ li ³	huay ⁶ sai ³			
12.18	sai: ³ nya: ² bu: ³ li ³	luang ⁴ pa: ² bang ¹	sa:m ³ neua ⁴			
12.19	wiang ³ cha:n ¹	siang ³ kwang ⁴	bpak ⁶ sa:n ³			
12.20	boh ¹ li: ² ka:n ³	ka:m ³ muan ²	ta ² kaek ⁶			
12.21	sa: ³ wa:n ³ na: ² ket ⁶	ko:ng ³ se ³ don ¹	sa ⁴ la: ² wa:n ³			
12.22	bpak ⁶ se ³	cha:m ¹ bpa ¹ sa:k ³	a:t ³ dta: ³ bpeu ¹			

12.23	kong ⁴	mae ² na:m ⁵ kohng ⁴	na:m ⁵ u ¹
12.24	na:m ⁵ ngeu:m ²	na:m ⁵ ga: ³ di:ng ¹	se ³ bang ⁵ fai: ³
12.25	se ³ ba:ng ⁵ hiang ⁴	se ³ don ¹	dta: ³ lat ⁶ sao ⁵
12.26	dta: ³ lat ⁶ laeng ³	ta: ³ no:n ⁴ lan ⁵ sang ⁵	ta: ³ no:n ⁴ sam ⁴ saen ⁴ tai: ³
12.27	ta: ³ no:n ⁴ set ⁵ ta ⁴	tat ⁵ luang ⁴	wa:t ² i:n ¹ bpaeng ¹
12.28	tat ⁵ kao ⁴ ti: ² lat ⁵	chi ³ nai ³ mo ⁵	ta ² deua ²
12.29	wa:t ² o:ng ¹ dteu ⁵	a: ³ nu: ² sa ⁴ wa: ² li ³	sa: ³ nam ⁴ gi ¹ la ³
12.30	deun ² nyo:n ³	si ⁴ kai: ³	wa:t ² dtai: ¹
12.31	si ⁴ tan ⁴	bpak ⁶ bpa ¹ sa:k ³	si ⁴ hom ⁴
12.32	chao: ⁵ a ¹ nu: ²	sai ⁴ lo:m ³	na ³ hai: ² diaw ¹
12.33	si ⁴ meuang ³	pon ³ sai: ³	nohng ⁴ bon ¹

PART 4: LAO-ENGLISH GLOSSARY FOR BEGINNERS
in English alphabetical order

Note: For a more complete word list, please refer to the English-Lao, Lao-English Dictionary compiled by R. Marcus (Tuttle, 1970).

in English alphabetical order

a' han*. Food ອາຫານ
 ai:¹ sa:³ ga:³ li:m³. Ice cream
 (Eng.) ໂອສະກຣິນ
 a:³ me³ li'ga¹. America ອະເມຣິກາ
 an². To read ອ່ານ
 a:n¹. Thing (general classifier)

ອັນ

a:ng¹ gi:t³. Britain, English

ອັງກິດ

a:³ nu:² sa:wa:² li³. Monument

ອະນຸສາວະລີ

a' nyu:². Age ອາຍຸ
 ao:¹. To take, to get ເອົາ
 a' ti:t². Week ອາທິດ
 ay⁵. Elder brother ອ້າຍ
 baep⁶. Manner, style, model ແບບ

bai:¹. Leaf, sheet, paper
 (classifier) ໃບ

bai:'dtohng¹. Banana leaf
 ໃບຕອງ

ban⁵. Home, house ບ້ານ

bang¹. Some ບາງ

bang¹ teua². Sometime ບາງເທື່ອ

ban⁵ nohk. Country-side, rural area
 ບ້ານນອກ

bat⁴ na:n⁵. Then ບາດນັ້ນ

ber¹. Butter (Fr.) ເບີ

ber:ng². To look at, to inspect,
 to examine ເບິ່ງ

beu:t³. Moment ບິດ

boh¹. Is that so? ບໍ່

boh² ບໍ່ 1. Not, No (negative
 particle)

2. ? (question particle)

boh² bpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴. Never mind,
 No sweat, You're welcome
 ບໍ່ເປັນຫຍັງ

bohn². Place ບ່ອນ

bo:t³ hian³. Lesson ບົດຮຽນ

bpa¹. Fish ປາ

bpa:³ cha:m¹. Fixed, permanent
 ປະຈຳ

bpaet⁶. Eight ແປດ

bpai¹. More than, over, after
 ປາຍ

bpai:¹. To go to ໄປ

bpai:' gon² der¹. Good-bye,
 (person leaving) ໄປກອນເດີ

bpai:' hian³. To go study ໄປຮຽນ

bpai:' sa:³ ni³. Post-office

bpak⁴. To speak ປາກ ໄປສະນີ

bpa:man³. About ປະມານ

bpa:n⁵. To grip ປັ້ນ

bpe:n¹ ເປັນ 1. To be (identify
 class, group,
 condition)
 2. Can (skill, learned
 activity)

bpe:n¹ nya:ng⁴. Why? ເປັນຫຍັງ

bpe:n¹ yang² dai:¹. How's every-
 thing? ເປັນຢ່າງໃດ

bpeu:m⁵. Book ປຶ້ມ

bpeu:m⁵ kian⁴. Notebook ປຶ້ມຂຽນ

bpi¹. Year ປີ

bpuk⁶. To plant ປູກ

bu:n¹. Festival, merit ບຸນ

bu:n'tohng³. Bounthong (name)
 ບຸນທອງ

cha:³. Will ຈະ

chai:¹. Heart ໃຈ

cha:k³. How many? ຈັກ

chak⁴ ni⁵ bpai¹. From here to ຈາກນີ້ໄປ

chang⁵. To hire ຈ້າງ

chao:⁵. You, your (common) ເຈົ້າ

chao:⁵ kohng⁴. Owner ເຈົ້າຂອງ

chao:⁵ si³ wi:t². King ເຈົ້າອຸຸດິດ

che:t³. Seven ເຈັດ

cheun¹. To fry ຈົມ
 cheu:ng². Then so ຈິ່ງ
 chin¹. China, Chinese ຈີນ
 chit³. Chit (boy's name) ຈິດ
 choht⁴. To stop, to park ຈອດ
 da:m¹. Black ດຳ
 dae². (Particle: please) ແດ່
 daeng¹. Red ແດງ
 dai:¹. Which, what? ໃດ
 dai:⁵. Since ໄດ້.....ແລ້ວ
 dai⁵ nyi:n³. To hear ໄດ້ຍິນ
 de². (particle: and ... ?) ເດີ
 de:k³ nohy⁵. Baby, child ເດັກນ້ອຍ
 der⁵. I (emphatic particle) ເດີ້
 dern¹. Ground ເດີ້ນ
 dern²nyo:n³. Airport ເດີນຍົນ
 dern⁴ tang³. To travel ເດີນທາງ
 di¹. Good, well, (positive value)
 ດີ
 diaw¹. One, only ດົງວ
 diaw¹ ni⁵. Now ດົງວນີ້
 di¹ gwa². Better ດີກວ່າ
 di:n¹ koh⁴. Tiles ດີນຂີ້
 di:n¹ chi². Bricks ດີນຈີ່
 do¹ la³. Dollar ໂດລາ
 dohk⁴. !(emphatic particle),
 flower ດອກ
 do:n¹. Long time ດົນ
 doy¹ (ka⁴nohy⁵). Yes, (self-
 humbling or respectful)
 ໂດຍ(ຂ້ານອຍ)
 dtae¹. ແຕ່
 1.(from)
 2.(but)
 3.(only)
 dtae¹ gi². Before, once ແຕ່ກີ້
 dtae¹ neung¹. Only ແຕ່.....ນຶ່ງ
 dtaeng¹ ngan³. To get married
 ແຕ່ງງານ
 dtaik¹. To fetch, to take ດັກ

dta:³ lat⁴. Market ດລາດ
 dta:³ lat⁴ sao:⁵. Morning market
 ດລາດເຊົ້າ
 dtam¹. Following, according to
 ດາມ
 dta:m¹ luat⁵. Police ດຳຮວດ
 dtam¹ta:m³ma:¹ da¹. Usually,
 generally ດາມທັມມະດາ
 dta:ng². Chair ດັງ
 dta:ng⁵. To stand, so ດັງ
 dtang² bpa:³ tet⁵. Abroad,
 foreign ດາງປະເທດ
 dta:ng⁵ chai:¹. Eager ດັງໃຈ
 dta:ng⁵ dtae². From (time) ດັງແຕ່
 dtang² kwaeng⁴. In the pro-
 vinces ດາງແຂວງ
 dteu:k³. Building ດີ
 dteun². To wake up ດື່ນ
 dti:³. (Particle: please) ດີ
 dto:³ Table ດໂຂ
 dtoh² bpai:¹. Next to, the
 following ດ້ໂປ
 dtohng⁵. Must, have to ດ້ອງ
 dtohn¹ bai². In the afternoon
 ດ້ອງຍາຍ
 dtohng⁵ gan¹. Necessary, to
 need ດ້ອງການ
 dtohn¹ laeng³. In the evening
 ດ້ອງແລງ
 dtohn¹ tiang². At noon ດ້ອງຫວັງ
 dtohp⁴. To answer ດ້ອຍ
 dtua¹. Body, animal (classifier)
 ດົວ
 dtua:³. To lie ດົວະ
 dtua¹ na:ng⁴ seu⁴. Letters of
 the alphabet ດົວໜັງສື
 duay⁵. By means of, with ດ້ວຍ
 er¹. Yes (conversation agreement)
 ເອີ
 ern⁵. To call, to be named ເອີນ
 euay⁵. Elder sister ເອີຍ

eun². Other ອື່ນ
 fai³. Light (bulb) ໄຟ
 fa:³ la:ng². Foreigner, occidental, westerner ຜົວຮົງ
 fa:ng³. To listen ຟັງ
 ga:³ dan¹. Board ກະດານ
 ga:³ dta:². Basket ກະຕາ
 gaeng¹. Soup ແກງ
 gaew⁵. Bottle (classifier) ແກວ
 ga:³ fe³. Coffee (Fr.) ກະເຟ
 gai:¹. Far ໄກ
 gai:². Chicken ໄກ້
 gai:⁵. Near ໃກ້
 ga:³ la:m³ bpi¹. Cabbage ກະລຳຍີ
 ga:m¹ la:ng³. To be (doing now, (progressive tense) ກຳລັງ
 gan¹. Actions (noun prefix) ການ
 ga:n¹. Each other, together ກັນ
 gan¹ dtang³ bpa:³ te:t² Foreign affairs ການຕ່າງປະເທດ
 gan¹ ka:ng² Finance ການເງິນ
 gao:² Old, before ແກ້
 ga:p.³ ກັບ 1. box (classifier)
 2. and, with
 3. to return
 ga:³ suang³ Ministry ກະຊວງ
 ge:ng² Well, skillfully ແກ້ງ
 gert⁶ To be born ເກີດ
 giaw² ga:p.³ About, concerning ກ່ຽວກັບ
 gi¹ lo³. Kilo (kilogram or kilometer) ກິໂລ
 gi:n¹ kao:⁶ to eat, ກິນເຂົ້າ
 gi:n¹ liang⁵. Party ກິນລ້ຽງ
 goh! ກີ 1. then
 2. as well, also
 3. (changes subject)
 goh¹ dai⁵:. Can, may, okay ກີໄດ້
 goh¹ mi³. Also ກີນີ
 gohn². Before ກ່ອນ
 gohn⁵. Solids, soap cake (classifier). ກອນ

gohng⁵. Under, below ກ້ອງ
 gohng¹ ba:n¹ sa³ gan¹ Military headquarters ກອງບັນຊາກກມ
 goh² sang⁶. To construct ກໍ່ສ້າງ
 gu:ng⁵ Shrimp ກຸງ
 gwa:². More than (comparative) ກວ່າ
 gwang⁵. Wide ກວ້າງ
 gwat⁶. To clean ກວດ
 ha⁴. ຫາ 1. to see, meet
 2. to, until
 3. to look for
 ha⁶. Five ຫ້າ
 haeng² sat⁵. Nation(al) ແຫ່ງຊາດ
 hai:⁶ ໃຫ້ 1. (for) in order to be
 2. (to)
 3. (let, allow)
 ha:k². To love ຮັກ
 han⁵. Shop, store ຮ້ານ
 ha:n⁶. There ຫນ
 hao:³. We (common) ເຮົາ
 ha:p². To receive, meet people ຮັບ
 he:n⁴. To see ເຫັນ
 he:t². To make, to do ເຮັດ
 he:t² gan¹. To work (in an office) ເຮັດການ
 he:t² gin¹. To cook ເຮັດກິນ
 he:t² wiak⁵. To work (manual labor) ເຮັດວຽກ
 heuan³. House ເຮືອນ
 heuan³ kua³. Kitchen ເຮືອນຄົວ
 hian³. To study, learn ຮຽນ
 hiw⁴. To desire ຫິວ
 hiw⁴ nam⁵. Thirsty ຫິວນ້ຳ
 hoh². To wrap ຫໍ່
 hohng⁶. Room (classifier) ຫ້ອງ
 hohng⁶ ap⁶ nam⁵. Bathroom ຫ້ອງອາບນ້ຳ
 hohng⁶ gi:n¹ kao:⁶. Dining room ຫ້ອງກິນເຂົ້າ
 hohng⁶ hian³. Classroom ຫ້ອງຮຽນ
 hohng⁶ ha:p² kaek⁶. Living room ຫ້ອງຮັບແຂກ

hohng⁶ nohn³. Bedroom ຫ້ອງນອນ
 hohy⁵. Hundred ຮ້ອຍ
 hong³ gan¹. Office ໂຮງການ
 hong³ haem³. Hotel ໂຮງແຮມ
 hong³ hian³. School ໂຮງຮຽນ
 hong³ moh⁴. Hospital ໂຮງໝໍ
 hu⁵ (cha:k³). To know (about) ຮູ້(ຈັກ)
 hua⁴. Head, round things,
 vegetable (classifier)
 ຫົວ
 ik⁴. More, again ອີກ
 i:n¹ do¹ ne³ sia³. Indonesia
 ອິນໂດເນເຊັຍ
 ka:³ chao:⁵. They, them, their
 (common) ຂະເຈົ້າ
 kaek⁶. Indian, Pakistani ແຂກ
 kaem³. Along ແລມ
 kai⁴. To sell ຂາຍ
 ka:m³. Kham (boy's name) ກຳ
 ka:k². Clear(ly) ກັກ
 ka⁶ lat⁵ sa² gan¹. Government
 official ຂ້າຮາຈຸການ
 ka³ men⁴. Kampuchea ຂເມນ
 ka:n³. ກົມ 1. Machines, vehicles
 (classifier)
 2. If
 kang⁶. At the side of, beside ຂ້າງ
 kang⁶ la:ng⁴. Behind ຂ້າງຫຼັງ
 ka³ nohy⁵. Sir, madam (respect-
 ful pronoun) ຂະນອຍ
 kao:⁴. They (common) ເຂົາ
 kao:⁴. ເຂົາ 1. Rice
 2. To enter ເຂົ້າ
 kao⁴ bpaeng⁵. Powder ເຂົ້າແປງ
 kao:⁴ chai:¹. To understand ເຂົ້າໃຈ
 kao:⁴ nohn³. To fall asleep ເຂົ້ານອນ
 kaip³. To drive (a vehicle) ຂັບ
 kat⁴. To be short of, to lose ຂາດ
 kat⁴ taun. To lose money in
 business ຂາດທຶນ

ker:ng². Half ເຄິ່ງ
 kery³. Used to, have (perfect
 tense) ເຄີຍ
 keu³. ຄື 1. Like, such as
 2. Alike, same, equal,
 similar
 keuang². Motor, things ເຄື່ອງ
 keuang² bpuk⁶. Plants ເຄື່ອງປູກ
 keuang² deu:m². Drinks ເຄື່ອງດື່ມ
 keuang² heuan³. Appliances,
 utensils ເຄື່ອງເຮືອນ
 keuang² nu:ng². Clothes ເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງ
 keu³ ga:n¹. The same, too,
 also ຄືກັນ
 keun⁶. To get on, to board,
 to rise ຂຶ້ນ
 keu³ si:². To guess, to seem ຄິດ
 ki⁶. Bad, (negative value) ຂີ້
 kian⁴. To write ຂຽນ
 ki:t². To think ຄິດ
 koh⁴. Beg ຂໍ
 kohng⁴. Of (possessive), thing ຂອງ
 kohng⁴ gi:n¹. Food ຂອງກິນ
 kohng⁴ wan⁴. Dessert ຂອງຫວານ
 kohp⁶ chai:¹. Thank you ຂອບໃຈ
 kohp⁵ kua³. Family ກອບຄົວ
 kohy⁴. I, me, my (common) ຂ້ອຍ
 ko:n³. People (race) ຄົນ
 ko:n³ sai:⁵. Maid ຄົນໃຈ
 kwa⁴. Right (direction) ຂວາ
 kwam³. Word, concepts (noun
 prefix) ຄວາມ
 la:². ! (emphatic particle) ຫຼະ
 la:². For, per ລະ
 lae:². And ແລະ
 laew⁵. Already, did (past tense) ແລ້ວ
 la³ gohn². Good-bye (person
 staying) ລາກ່ອນ
 lai:². To total, to list ໄລ່
 lai⁴. Very ຫຼາຍ
 lai³ gan¹. List, program ລາຍການ

lai³ gan¹ a' han⁴. Menu ລາຍການອາຫານ
 la¹ ka³. Price ຮາກາ
 lan⁵. Million ລ້ານ
 lang⁵. To wash (objects) ລ້າງ
 la:ng⁴. Building, house (classifier) ຫຼັງ
 la:ng⁴ chak⁶. After ຫຼັງຈາກ
 la:ng⁴ ka³. Roof ຫຼັງຄາ
 lang³ tua². Sometimes ລາງເທື່ອ
 lao³. Lao, he, she (common) ລາວ
 lao⁶. Liquor ເຫຼົ້າ
 lao⁶ waeng³. Wine (Fr.) ເຫຼົ້າແວງ
 le:k² le:k² noh⁵ noh⁵. Small (objects) ເລັກນ້ອຍໆ
 leu². Or ຫຼື
 leuang². Story, subject ເຣືອງ
 leuay⁵ leuay⁵. Always, often ເລື້ອຍໆ
 leum³. To forget ລືມ
 liaw⁵. To turn ລ້ວງ
 lin⁶. To play ຫຼິມ
 lo³ dti¹. Roast (Fr.) ໂລຕີ
 loh:t⁶. Tube (classifier) ຫຼອດ
 lo:m³. Wind ລົມ
 lo:ng³. Down, to get down, alight ລົງ
 lo:t². Car ຮີດ
 lo:t² doy¹ san⁴. Taxi, bus ຮີດໂດຍສານ
 lu:k². To wake up, get up ລຸກ
 luk⁵. Child ລູກ
 luk⁵ si:t³. Student ລູກສິດ
 lu:t³. To discount, to lower ຫຼຸດ
 luang⁴ pa:² bang¹. Luang Prabang (City name) ຫຼວງພະບາງ
 ma³. To come (action towards speaker) ມາ
 ma² dam¹. Mrs., Madame, ma'am ມາດານ

mae². Mother ແມ່
 mae² heuan³. Housewife ແມ່ເຮືອນ
 mae² ka⁵. Sales woman ແມ່ຄ້າ
 maen². To be (equivalence) ແມ່ນ
 maen² boh². Right? ແມ່ນບໍ່
 maen² laew⁵. Right ແມ່ນແລ້ວ
 ma:² ho⁴ so:t³. Mahosot (hospital name) ມະໂຫສິດ
 mai:². New, again ໃໝ່
 ma:k². To like, do often ມັກ
 mak⁶ giang⁵. Oranges ພາກກວ້ງ
 mak⁶ guay⁵. Banana ພາກກ່ວຍ
 mak⁶ hu:ng². Papaya ພາກຫຼັງ
 mak⁶ le:n². Tomato ພາກເລັມ
 mak⁶ mai:⁵. Fruit ພາກໂມ
 mak⁶ na:t². Pineapple ພາກນົດ
 mak⁶ sa⁴ li³. Corn ພາກສາລີ
 mak⁶ taeng¹. Cucumber, melon ພາກແຕງ
 ma:n⁶. Solid, strong ສໝ
 ma:t². Bundles (classifier) ມັດ
 meu⁵. Day ມື້
 meu² dai:¹ ເມື່ອໃດ . 1. When? ເມື່ອໃດ
 2. Whenever
 meuang³. Country, city, town ເມືອງ
 meuang³ lao³. Laos ເມືອງລາວ
 meu⁵ eun². Tomorrow ມື້ອື່ນ
 meu⁵ ni⁵. Today ມື້ນີ້
 meu⁵ wan³ ni⁵. Yesterday ມື້ວານນີ້
 mi³. To have ມີ
 mia³. Wife ມັງ
 mi:n³ la³. Miller (a surname) ມິນລາ
 mong³. O'clock, watch, clock ໂມງ
 mo:t³ tu:k². Every ມີທຸກໆ
 mu². Friend ຜູ້
 mu⁴. Pig ຜູ້
 mu:ng³. To roof ມຸງ
 na³. Rice-field ມາ

na 6. ¹ ສາ 1. Face
2. Next

naew³. Kind, sort ແນວ

nai:³. In ໃນ

nai³. Boss ນາຍ

nai³ ku³. Teacher ນາຍຄູ

nai:³ meuang³. Downtown ໃນເມືອງ

na:k.² Professional ນັກ

na:m³. With ນຳ

na:m⁵. Water, river ນ້ຳ

na:m³ ga:n¹. Together ນຳກັນ

na:m⁵ kohng⁴. Mekong River
ນ້ຳຂອງ

na:m⁵ o:p.³ Perfume ນ້ຳອົບ

na:m⁵ pu:². Fountain ນ້ຳຟ

na:m⁵ sa³. Tea ນ້ຳຊາ

na:n⁵. That, there ນັ້ນ

nang³. Mrs., Miss ນາງ

na:ng² (lo:ng¹). To sit (down)
ນັ່ງ(ລິ່ງ)

na:ng⁴. Skin ຜັງ

na:ng⁴ seu⁴. Letter, writing ຜັງສື

na³ ti³. Minute ນາທີ

neung⁴. To steam ຜັງ

neu:ng². One ນຶ່ງ

ni⁵. This, here ນີ້

ngai². Easy ງ່າຍ

ngam³. Beautiful, pretty ງາມ

nger:n³. Money ເງິນ

noh³. Right? ນີ້

nohk⁵. Outside ນອກ

nohn³. To sleep ນອນ

nohng⁴ bohn¹. Nong Bone
(place name) ຫອງບອນ

nohng⁵ sai³. Younger brother
ນອງຊາຍ

nohng⁵ sao⁴. Younger sister
ນອງສາວ

nohy⁵. Small ນອຍ

nohy⁵ neu:ng². A bit, a little
ໜ້ອຍນຶ່ງ

nuay². Fruits, small round
objects (classifier) ຫວຍ

nyai². Big, large ໃຫຍ່

nyak⁵. Difficult ບາກ

nya:ng³. Still, not yet ຍັງ

nya:ng⁴. What? ຫວັງ

nyi:n³ di¹. Glad to know you,
you're welcome ຍິນດີ

nyi² bpu:n². Japan ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ

nyo³ ta¹. Public works ໂຍທາ

o³. Oh! ໂອ

ohk⁴. Out, to get out ອອກ

ohm⁵. Around ອ້ອມ

oh:ng¹ dteu⁵. Ongtu. (Temple name)
ອົງຕີ

pa³. To guide to take ພາ

paeng³. Expensive ແຜງ

pa:k³ bua². Onion ຜັກບົວ

pa:k² pohm². To rest, to stay
ພັກຜ່ອນ

pa:k³ sa:³ la:t². Lettuce ຜັກສັດ

pa:k³ tiam³. Garlic ຜັກຂ້າງ

pa:² lat⁵ sa:² wang³. Royal
Palace ພະຣາຊວັງ

pa:n³. Thousand ພັນ

pa:n³ la:² nya³. Wife ພັນລະຍາ

pa³ sa⁴. Language ພາສາ

per:n². He, she, they (formal) ເພິ່ນ

peua². In order to, to, for ເພື່ອ

piang³ dtae². Only ພຽງແຕ່

pi² nohng⁵. Relative(s) ພີ່ນ້ອງ

pi:t³. Error, mistake ຜິດ

pi:² ti³. Ceremonies ຜິທີ

poh². Father ພໍ່

poh:². Because ເພາະ

po:p². To meet ພົບ

puak⁷. (plural prefix) ພວກ
 puak⁷ kohy⁶. We, our (common)
 pu⁶. Person ຜູ້
 pua⁴. Husband ຜົວ
 pu⁶ dai:¹ pu⁶ neu:ng². Someone
 ຜູ້ໃດຜູ້ໜຶ່ງ
 pi⁶ diaw¹. Along, single ຜູ້ດຽວ
 sa:². To wash (hair) ຊື້
 sa:³ bai⁴ di¹. Hello, How
 are you, fine Good
 morning (or afternoon
 or evening) ສປາຍດີ
 sa:³ bu¹. Soap ສະບູ
 sa:³ dte:k³. Steak (Fr.) ສະເຕັກ
 sa:³ gohn². First(ly), before
 ສະກ່ອນ
 sai⁵. Left (direction) ຊ້າຍ
 sai⁴. Where? ໃສ
 sai:². In, into, to put on ໃສ
 sa:k². To wash (clothes) ຊັກ
 saeng⁷. Seng (boy's name) ແສງ
 saep⁵. Tasty, delicious ແຂບ
 sa:³ la:t² (pa:k³). Salad (Fr.)
 ສລັດ(ຜັກ)
 sam⁴. Three ສາມ
 sa⁴ mi³. Husband ສາມີ
 sa:m⁴ ka:n³. Important ສຳຄັນ
 sa:m⁴ la:p². For ສຳລັບ
 sam⁴ loh⁵. (Samloh) pedicab ສາມລໍ
 sam⁴ saen⁴ tai:³. Samsenthai
 (ancient Lao King) ສາມແສນໂທ
 sam⁴ sip³. Thirty ສາມສິບ
 sa:n⁵. Floor, stage ຊັ້ນ
 sang⁵ Elephant ຊ້າງ
 sang² Craftsman ຊ້າງ
 sa:n⁵ teu:ng². Upstairs ຊັ້ນເທິງ
 sa:n⁵ lu:m². Downstairs ຊັ້ນລຸ່ມ
 sao³. Twenty ຊາວ
 sao:². To rent, to let ເຊົ່າ
 sao:⁷. Morning ເຊົ້າ

sa:³ pa³. Assembly ສະພາ
 sa:³ tan⁴ tut⁵. Embassy ສຖານທູດ
 se:n⁶. Line road, long objects
 (classifier) ເສັ້ນ
 sern³. Please, to invite ເຊີນ
 set⁴ ta⁴ ti:² lat⁷. Setthathirat
 (ancient Lao King)
 ເສດຖາທິຣາດ
 seu². Name ຊື່
 seu⁵. To buy ຊື້
 seu⁵ kohng⁴. To shop ຊື້ຂອງ
 seu:k³ sa⁴. To study ສຶກສາ
 seu² seu². Only that, nothing
 else, straight ຊື່ໆ
 si². Four ສີ່
 si⁷. Color ສີ
 si:². Will ຈົ່ງ
 sia³. Veranda ເຊັງ
 siang³ kwang⁴. Xieng Khouang
 (city name) ຊຶງຂວາງ
 sin⁵. Meat ຊີ້ນ
 si³ ne:(ma)⁷ Movie ຊີເນ(ມາ)
 si² nyaek⁵. Crossroad ສີ່ແຍກ
 si:p³. Ten ສິບ
 si⁴ tan⁴. SithanNeua (Place
 name) ສີຖານເນືອງ
 sohn⁴. To teach ສອນ
 sohg⁴. Two ສອງ
 sohy². To help ຊ່ວຍ
 so:m⁶. Sausage ສົ້ມ
 so:ng². To send ສົ່ງ
 suan⁴. Garden ສວນ
 suan² ສວນ 1. Part
 2. For, as for ສ່ວນ
 suan² kohy. As for myself ສ່ວນຂອງ
 suan² lai⁴. Mostly ສ່ວນຫຼາຍ
 suay⁴. Late ສ່ວຍ
 sung⁴. High, tall ສູງ
 ta⁴. To wait ຖ້າ
 ta² deua². Thadeua (town name)
 ທ່າເດືອນ

tae⁵. Real(ly), quite ແທ້
 tae:k²si³. Taxi (Fr.) ແຕັກຊີ
 taen³ nit². Tennis (Fr.) ແຕນນິສ
 taew⁴. Neighborhood ແຄວ
 tai:³. Native person ໄທ
 ta:³ laeng⁴ kao². Information
 ຕຳລາຂ່າວ
 ta:² le³. Sea ທະເລ
 tam⁴. To ask (questions) ຖາມ
 ta:n³ i:t³. First ຫນ້ອຍ
 ta:m³ ma:² da¹. Ordinary ຫມາມະດາ
 tan². You, he (formal) ທ່ານ
 tang³. Street, way, side ທາງ
 ta:ng³ mo:t³. All in all ທັງໝົດ
 tang³ na⁶. In front of ທາງໜ້າ
 ta:³ no:n⁴. Road, street, avenue
 ຕາມ
 tao.⁵ Mr. (polite) ທ້າວ
 tao:² dai¹. How much? ທ້າຍາດ
 tao:² na:n⁵. Only that ທ້າຍນັ້ນ
 tai.⁵. Stupa, shrine ທາດ
 tat.⁵ luang⁴. That Luang
 (National shrine) ທາດຫຼວງ
 teua². Times ທ້ອຍ
 teuk⁶. (passive voice) ຖືກ
 teu:n². Money, capital ທຶນ
 ti². Which, that, -th ທີ່
 tiaw². To take a walk, to visit
 for fun ທ່ຽວ
 ti² su:t³. Most, (-est) ທີ່ສຸດ
 tohn³. To change (money) ທອນ
 tu⁴. To brush, sweep ທູ
 tu:k² tu:k². Every, each ທຸກໆ
 wa². That (relative pronoun) ວ່າ
 waeng³. Wine (Fr.) ແວງ
 wai:³. Fast, quickly, early ໄວ
 wai:⁵. ໄວ 1. To place down
 2. To keep for a reason
 wa:n³ a:ng¹ kan³. Tuesday ວັນອັງຄານ

wa:n³ a¹ ti:t². Sunday ວັນອາທິດ
 wa:n³ cha:n¹. Monday ວັນຈັນ
 wa:n³ pa:² ha:t³. Thursday ວັນພະຫັດ
 wa:n³ pu:t². Wednesday ວັນພຸດ
 wa:n³ su:k³. Friday ວັນສຸກ
 wa:n³ sao:⁴. Saturday ວັນເສົາ
 wa:n³ ti². The date ວັນທີ່
 wao:⁵. To say, to talk, to
 speak ເວົ້າ
 wa:t². (Wat) temple ວັດ
 we³ la³. ເວລາ 1. Time
 2. When
 wi⁴. Banana (classifier) ຫວີ
 wiak⁵. Work ວຽກ
 wiang³ cha:n¹. Vientiane
 (capital of Laos) ວຽງຈັນ
 wi:² ta:² nya³ lai:³. High
 school ວິທຍາໄລ
 wi:² ti³. Method ວິທີ
 ya¹. Medicine, cigarette ຢາ
 ya¹. Don't ຢ່າ
 yak⁶ dai:⁵. To want ຢາກໄດ້
 yam¹. To visit ຢ້ານ
 yang². Kind, sort ຢ່າງ
 ya¹ tu⁴ kaew⁶. Toothpaste ຢາດູແຂວ
 ye:n¹. Cold (temperature) ເຢັນ
 yu:² ຢູ່ 1. To be (location)
 2. (Reinforcing particle)
 yu:t³. To stop ຢຸດ